3 Le 4

THE LIFE *and* ADVENTURES OF *PETER WILKINS*, A *Corniſh* Man:

Relating particularly,

His Shipwreck near the South Pole; his wonderful Paſſage thro' a ſubterraneous Cavern into a kind of new World; his there meeting with a Gawry or flying Woman, whoſe Life he preſerv'd, and afterwards married her; his extraordinary Conveyance to the Country of Glums and Gawrys, or Men and Women that fly. Likewiſe a Deſcription of this ſtrange Country, with the Laws, Cuſtoms, and Manners of its Inhabitants, and the Author's remarkable Tranſactions among them.

Taken from his own Mouth, in his Paſſage to *England*, from off *Cape Horn* in *America*, in the Ship *Hector*.

With an INTRODUCTION, giving an Account of the ſurprizing Manner of his coming on board that Veſſel, and his Death on his landing at *Plymouth* in the Year 1739.

Illuſtrated with ſeveral CUTS, clearly and diſtinctly repreſenting the Structure and Mechaniſm of the Wings of the Glums and Gawrys, and the Manner in which they uſe them either to ſwim or fly.

By R. S. *a Paſſenger in the* Hector.

VOL. II.

12 Da

LONDON:

Printed for J. ROBINSON at the *Golden Lion* in *Ludgate-ſtreet*; and R. DODSLEY at *Tully's Head* in *Pall-Mall*. M.DCC.LI.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

CHAP. I.

PETER *prepares for his Father's Reception; Arguments about his Beard; expects his Wife; Reflections on her not coming; ſees a Meſſenger on the Rock; has Notice of* Pendlehamby's *Arrival, and prepares a Treat.* pag. 1

CHAP. II.

Peter *ſettles the Formality of his Father's Reception; Deſcription of their March, and alighting; receives his Father; conducts him to the Grotto; offers to beg Pardon for his Marriage; is prevented by* Pendlehamby; Youwarkee

warkee *not known in her* Engliſh *Habit*; *Quarters the Officers in the Tent.* pag. 9

CHAP. III.

The Manner of their Dinner; *believe the Fiſh and Fowl to be Fruits*; *hears his Brother and the* Colambs *are coming*; *Account of their lying*; Peter's *Reflections on the want of the Graundee*; *they view the Arkoe*; *Servants harder to pleaſe than their Maſters*; *Reaſon for different Dreſſes the ſame Day.* — 17

CHAP. IV.

Quangrallort *arrives with the* Colambs; *ſtreightned for Accommodation*; *remove to the Tent*; Yourwarkee *not known*; Peter *relates Part of his Travels*; *Diſpute about the Beaſt-Fiſh Skins.* 27

CHAP. V.

Go a fiſhing; *catch a Beaſt-Fiſh*; *afraid of the Gun*; *how* Peter *altered his Net*; *a Fiſh-dinner for the Guards*; *Method of dreſſing and eating it.* —— —— 35

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

A Shooting propoſed; all afraid of the Gun but one private Guard; his Behaviour; Pendlehamby *at* Peter's *Requeſt makes him a General;* Peter's *Diſcourſe thereon; Remainder of his Story; the* Colambs *return.* —— pag. 46

CHAP. VII.

Peter *finds his Stores low; ſends* Youwarkee *to the Ship; receives an Invitation to* Georigetti's *Court.* —— —— 61

CHAP. VIII.

Naſgig *comes with a Guard to fetch* Peter; *long Debate about his going;* Naſgig's *Uneaſineſs at* Peter's *Refuſal; relates a Prediction to him, and Proceedings thereon at* Georigetti's *Court;* Peter *conſents to go; prepares a Machine for that Purpoſe.* —— 67

CHAP. IX.

Peter's *Speech to the Soldiery*; *offers them Freedom*; *his Journey*; *is met by the King*; *the King ſent back, and why*; Peter *alights in the King's Garden*; *his Audience*; *Deſcription of his Supper and Bed.* —— pag. 87

CHAP. X.

The King's Apartments deſcribed; Peter *is introduced to the King*; *a Moucheratt called*; *his Diſcourſe with the King about Religion.* pag. 105

CHAP. XI.

Peter's *Reflections on what he was to perform*; *ſettles the Method of it*; *his Advice to his Son and Daughter*; *Globe-lights living Creatures*; *takes* Maleck *into his Service*; Naſgig *diſcovers to* Peter *a Plot at Court*; *Revolt of* Gauingrunt. —— —— 116

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

A Moucheratt held; Speeches of Ragams *and* Colambs; Peter *ſettles Religion; informs the King of a Plot; ſends* Naſgig *to the Ship for Cannon.* —— pag. 128

CHAP. XIII.

The King hears Barbarſa *and* Yaccombourſe *diſcourſe on the Plot; they are impeached by* Peter *at a Moucheratt; condemned and executed;* Nicor *ſubmits, and is releaſed.* 142

CHAP. XIV.

Naſgig *returns with the Cannon;* Peter *informs him of the Execution; appoints him a Guard; ſettles the Order of his March againſt* Harlokin; *a Combat between* Naſgig *and the Rebel-General; the Battle;* Peter *returning with* Harlokin's *Head, is met by a Sweecoan; a public Feſtival; Slavery aboliſhed.* —— 154

CHAP. XV.

A Viſitation of the revolted Provinces propoſed by Peter; *his new Name of the Country received; Religion*

Religion ſettled in the Weſt; Slavery aboliſhed there; Laſmeel *returns with* Peter; Peter *teaches him Letters; the King ſurprized at written Correſpondence;* Peter *deſcribes the Make of a Beaſt to the King.* pag. 171

CHAP. XVI.

Peter *ſends for his Family; a riſing of former Slaves on that Account; takes a View of the City; a Deſcription of it, and of the Country; hot and cold Springs.* —— 185

CHAP. XVII.

Peter *ſends for his Family;* Pendlehamby *gives a fabulous Account of the Peopling of that Country; their Policy and Government;* Peter's *Diſcourſe on Trade;* Youwarkee *arrives; invites the King and Nobles to a Treat; ſends to* Grande-yolet *for Fowls.* —— 199

CHAP. XVIII.

Peter *goes to his Father's; traverſes the black Mountains; takes a Flight to Mount* Alkoe; *gains*

gains the Minert; overcomes the Governour's Troops; proclaims Georigetti *King; ſeizes the Governour; returns him the Government;* Peter *makes Laws with the Conſent of the People; he returns to* Brandleguarp *with Deputies.* — — pag. 213

CHAP. XIX.

Peter *arrives with the Deputies; preſents them to the King; they return; a Colony decreed to be ſent thither;* Naſgig *made Governour; manner of chuſing the Colony; a Flight-race, and the Intent of it;* Walſi *wins the Prize, and is found to be a Gawrey.* — 236

CHAP. XX.

The Race reconciles the two Kingdoms; the Colony proceeds; build a City; Peter *views the Country at a Diſtance; hears of a Prophecy of the King of* Norbon's *Daughter* Stygee; *goes thither; kills the King's Nephew; fulfils the Prophecy, by engaging* Stygee *to* Georigetti; *returns.* 252

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

A Diſcourſe on Marriage between Peter *and* Georigetti; Peter *propoſed* Stygee; *the King accepts it; relates his Tranſactions at* Norbon; *the Marriage is conſummated; Account of the Marriage Ceremony;* Peter *goes to* Norbon; *opens a free Trade to Mount* Alkoe; *gets Traders to ſettle at* Norbon; *convoys Cattle to Mount* Alkoe. —— pag. 268

CHAP. XXII.

Peter *looking over his Books finds a* Latin *Bible; ſets about a Tranſlation; teaches ſome of the Ragams Letters; ſets up a Paper Manufacture; makes the Ragams read the Bible; the Ragams teach others to read and write; a Fair kept at the black Mountain;* Peter's *Reflection on the* Swangeantines. —— 278

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Peter's *Children provided for*; Youwarkee's *Death*; *how the King and Queen ſpend their time*; Peter *grows melancholy*; *wants to get to* England; *contrives Means*; *is taken up at Sea.* ——— pag. 285

To the RIGHT HONOURABLE

ELIZABETH,

Counteſs of *Northumberland.*

MADAM,

FEW Authors, I believe, who write in my Way, (whatever View they may ſet out with) can, in the Proſecution of their Work, forbear to dreſs their fictitious Characters, in the real Ornaments themſelves have been moſt delighted with.

This, I confeſs, hath been my Caſe, in the Perſon of *Youwarkee*, in the following Sheets; for having formed her Body, I found myſelf at an inexpreſſible Loſs how to adorn her Mind in the maſterly Sentiments I coveted to endue her with; 'till I recollected the moſt aimable Pattern in your Ladyſhip; a ſingle View of which, at a Time of the utmoſt Fatigue to his Lordſhip, hath charmed my Imagination ever ſince.

If a Participater of the Cares of Life in general, alleviates the Concerns of Man; what an invaluable Bleſſing muſt that Lady prove, to the Softneſs of whoſe Sex Nature hath conjoined an Aptitude for Council, an Application, Zeal and Diſ-

patch,

patch, but too rarely found in his own?

Had my Situation in Life been ſo happy as to have preſented me with Opportunities of more frequent and minuter Remarks upon your Ladyſhip's Conduct, I might have defy'd the whole *Britiſh* Fair to have outſhone my ſouthern Gawry: For if, to a majeſtick Form and extenſive Capacity, I had been qualified to have copied that natural Sweetneſs of Diſpoſition, that maternal Tenderneſs, that Chearfulneſs, that Complacency, Condeſcenſion, Affability, and unaffected Benevolence, which ſo apparently diſtinguiſh the Counteſs of *Northumberland*; I had exhibited in my

Youwarkee

Touwarkee, a Standard for future Generations.

Madam, I am the more ſenſible of my Speaking but the Truth, from the late Inſtance of your Benignity, which intitles me to the Honour of ſubſcribing myſelf,

Madam,

Your Ladyſhip's

moſt obliged and

moſt obedient Servant

R. P.

A GENUINE ACCOUNT OF THE LIFE OF *PETER WILKINS.*

CHAP. I.

Peter *prepares for his Father's Reception*; *Arguments about his Beard*; *expects his Wife*; *Reflections on her not coming*; *ſees a Meſſenger on the Rock*; *has Notice of* Pendlehamby's *Arrival, and prepares a Treat.*

THE News my late Viſitors had brought me, ſet my Mind quite at eaſe; and now, having leiſure to look into my own Affairs, with the Summer before me, I began to conſider what Preparations I muſt make againſt the Return of my Wife; for according to the Report I had heard, I concluded there would be a great Number of Attendants;

and, as her Father would no doubt pique himſelf upon the Grandeur of his Equipage, if his Followers ſhould ſee nothing in me, but a plain dirty Fellow, I ſhould be contemned, and perhaps my Wife, thro' my means, be ſlighted; or, at leaſt, loſe that Reſpect the Report of me had in a great meaſure procured her.

The firſt thing therefore that I did, was to look into my Cheſts again, wherein I knew there were many of the *Portugueſe* Captain's Cloaths, and take out ſuch as would be moſt ſuitable to the Occaſion, and lay them all by themſelves. I found a blue Cloth laced Coat double-breaſted, with very large gold Buttons, and very broad gold Button-holes, lined with white Silk; a Pair of black Velvet Breeches, a large gold-laced Hat, and a Point Neckcloth, with two or three very good Shirts, two Pair of red-heeled Shoes, a Pair of white, and another of ſcarlet Silk Stockings, two ſilver-hilted Swords, and ſeveral other good things; but upon Examination of theſe Cloaths, and by a Letter or two found in the Pockets of ſome of them, directed to Captain *Jeremiah Vauclaile*, in *Threadneedle-Street*, *London*, I judged theſe belonged to the *Engliſh* Captain, taken by the *Portugueſe* Ship in *Africa*. I immediately tried ſome of them on, and thought they became me very well, and laid all thoſe in particular Cheſts, to be ready when the Time came, and ſet them into one of my inner Rooms.

Upon

Upon examining the Contents of another Cheſt, I found a long ſcarlet Cloak laced, a Caſe of Raſors, a Pair of Sciſſars, and Shaving-glaſs; a Long-wig, and two Bob-wigs, and laid them by; for I was determined, as I might poſſibly have no other Opportunity, to make myſelf appear as conſiderable as I could.

When I had digeſted in my Mind upon what Occaſions I would appear in either of them, and laid them in proper Order, *Pedro*, and I went ſeveral Days to work with the Net, and caught abundance of Fiſh, which I ſalted, and dried; and we cut a great Quantity of long Graſs to dry, and ſpread in my Tent, for the lower Gentry, and made up a little Cock of it; we alſo cut, and piled up a large Parcel of Fire-wood; and as I had now about thirty of the beſt Fiſh-ſkins, each of which would cover four Chairs, I nailed them on for Cuſhions to my Chairs, and the reſt I ſewed together, and made Rugs of them.

I had obſerved, that my Brother *Quangrallort*, and *Roſſig*, neither of them had Beards, and as they were quite ſmooth chinned, I conjectured that none of their Countrymen had any; ſo, ſays I, if that is the caſe, as I have now both Sciſſars, and Raſors; I will e'en cut off mine, to be like them: I then ſet up my Glaſs, taking my Sciſſars in hand; but had not quite cloſed them for a Snip, when I conſidered, that as I was not of their Country, and was ſo different from them in other

reſpects, whether it would not add to my Dignity, to appear with my Beard before them: This I debated ſome time, and then determined in favour of my Beard; but as this Queſtion ſtill ran in my Mind, and I wavered ſometimes this way, ſometimes that; I ſome Days after prepared again for Execution, and took a large Snip off; when, ſays I, how can I tell whether I can ſhave after all, I have not tried yet, and if I can't, how much more ridiculous ſhall I look with ſtubbed Hair here and there, than with this comely Beard? I muſt ſay, I never in my Life had ſo long a Debate with myſelf; it holding upwards of two Months, varying, almoſt every time I thought of it: Till one Day, dreſſing myſelf in a Suit I had not before tried on, and looking in the Glaſs; it can never be, ſays I, that this grave Beard ſhould ſuit with theſe fine Cloaths: No, I will have it off I am reſolved. I had no ſooner given another good Snip, than ſpying the Cloak, I had a mind to ſee how I looked in that: Ay, ſays I, now I ſee I muſt either wear this Beard, or not this Cloak. How majeſtick does it look? So ſage, ſo grave, it denotes Wiſdom, and Solidity; and if they already think well of me, don't let me be Fool enough to relinquiſh my Claim to that, for a gay Coat. I had no ſooner fixed on this, than I took up all the Implements to put again into the Cheſt; and the laſt of them being the Glaſs, I would have one more Look, before I parted with it! But, my Beard

Beard made ſuch a horrid, frightful Figure, with the three great Cuts in it, that, tho' it grieved me to think I muſt part with it juſt when I had come to a Reſolution to preſerve it, I fell to work with my Sciſſars, and off it came; and after two or three Trials, I became very expert with my Raſor.

Winter coming on, as I knew I muſt ſoon have more Occaſion than ever for a Stock of Proviſion, from the Increaſe of Mouths I expected; I laid in a Stock for a little Army, and when the Hurry of that was over, I kept a ſharp Look-out upon the Level, in Expectation of my Company; and had once a mind to have brought my Tent thither, to entertain them in: But it was too much trouble for the Hands I had, ſo I dropp'd the Deſign. I took one or other of the Children with me every Day, and grew more and more uneaſy, at hearing nothing of them; and, as uncertain Attendance naturally breeds Thoughtfulneſs, and the Hours in no Employ paſs ſo leiſurely, as in that; my Mind, preſaged numberleſs intervening Accidents, that might, if not intirely prevent their coming, at leaſt poſtpone it.

Thinks I, and that I fixed for my Standard, *Youwarkee*, I'm ſure, would come if ſhe could; but then, ſays I, here is a long Flight, and to be undertaken by an old Man too, for I thought my Father-in-Law much older than I afterwards found him, who is now ſafe, and quiet at home; and

having his Daughter with him, is no doubt deſirous of continuing ſo: Now what cares he for my Uneaſineſs, he can find one Pretence or other, no doubt, of drilling on the Time till the dark Weather is over; and then, forſooth, it will be too light to come; and thus ſhall I be hung up in Suſpence for another Year: Or what if my Brother, as he called himſelf, for he may be no more a Brother of mine, than the Pope's, for aught I know, came only on a Pretence, to ſee how I went on; and not finding, for all his ſham Compliments to me, his Siſter married to his Father's liking, ſhould adviſe him not to ſend my Wife back again; and ſo all the Trouble I have had on their Account, ſhould only prove a ſtanding Monument of my fooliſh Credulity! Nay, it is not impoſſible, but as I have already had one Meſſage, to inform me *Tommy* and *Hallycarnie* are provided for, as much as to ſay, in plain *Engliſh*, I ſhall ſee them no more, ſo I may ſoon have another, by ſome ſneaking Puppy or other, whom I ſuppoſe I am to treat for the News, to tell me, my Wife, and *Patty* are provided for too, and I am to thank my kind Benefactors, for taking ſo great a Charge off my Hands. Am I? No; I'll firſt ſet my Tent, Cloaths, Chairs, and all other Mementos of my Stupidity on fire, and by periſhing, what's left of us, in the Blaze, exterminate at once the wretched Remains of a deſerted Family. I hate to be made a Fool of.

I had ſcarce finiſhed my Soliloquy, when I heard a monſtrous ſort of Groan, or Growl in the Air, like Thunder at a Diſtance. What's that, *Pedro*, ſays I? I never heard the like before, Daddy, ſays he. Look about Boy, ſays I, do you ſee any thing? We heard it again; Hark! ſays *Pedro*, it comes from that End of the Lake. While we were liſtening to the third Sound, ſays *Pedro*, Daddy, yonder is ſomething black upon the Rock, I did not ſee juſt now. Why? it moves, ſays I, *Pedro*, here is News, good or bad. Hope the beſt, Daddy, ſays *Pedro*, I wiſh it may be Mammy. No, ſays I, *Pedro*, I don't expect her before I hear from her. Why then, ſays *Pedro*, here they come; I can plainly deſcern three of them. If my Brother *Tommy* ſhould be there, Daddy? No, ſays I, *Pedro*, no ſuch good News; they tell me, *Tommy*'s provided for, and that's to ſuffice for the Loſs of my Child: And yet, *Pedro*, if I could get you ſettled in *England*, in ſome good Employ, I ſhould conſent to that; but what *Tommy*'s to be, I know not.

By this time, the three Perſons were ſo near, that ſeeing us, they called out, *Peter*; and I, making Signs for them to alight, they ſettled juſt before me, and told me, that *Pendlehamby*, and *Youwarkee* would be with me by Light next Day.

I had no ſooner heard this, but ſo far was I from firing my Tent, that I invited them to my Grotto, ſet the beſt Cheer before them, and with

Over-haſte to do more than one thing at once, I even left undone, what I might have done.

I aſked them, who came with my Father? and they told me, about two hundred Guards: That knocked me up again, as I had but prepared for about ſixty; thinks I, my Scheme is all untwiſted. I then aſked them, what loud Noiſe it was, and if they heard it, juſt before I ſaw them over the Rock. They told me, they heard only the Gripſack [Trumpet] they brought with them, to diſtinguiſh them from ordinary Meſſengers; and then one of them ſhewed it me, for I had before only taken it for a long Staff in his Hand: But, ſays he, you will hear them much louder Tomorrow, and longer, before they come to you.

Having entertained them to their Content, I ſent them to reſt, not chuſing to aſk any Queſtions; for I avoided anticipating the Pleaſure of hearing all the News from *Youwarkee* herſelf. However, the Boys and I prepared what Proviſions of Fowl and Fiſh we could in the Time, to be ready cold, againſt they came, and then lay down ourſelves.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Peter *ſettles the Formality of his Father's Reception; Deſcription of their March, and alighting, receives his Father; conducts him to the Grotto; offers to beg Pardon for his Marriage; is prevented by* Pendlehamby; Youwarkee *not known in* Engliſh *Habit; Quarters the Officers in the Tent.*

MY Mind ran ſo all Night upon ſettling the Formality with which I ſhould receive *Pendlehamby*, that I got little or no Reſt. In the Morning I ſpread my Table in as neat a manner as I could, and having dreſſed myſelf, *Pedro*, *Jemmy*, and *David*, we marched to the Plain; myſelf carrying a Chair, and each of them a Stool. I was dreſſed in a Cinnamon-coloured Gold-button Coat, Scarlet Waiſtcoat, Velvet Breeches, white Silk Stockings, the Campain-wig flowing, a Gold-laced Hat and Feather, Point Cravat, Silver Sword, and over all my Cloak: As for my Sons, they had the Cloaths my Wife made before ſhe went.

When we heard them coming, I marſhalled the Children in the Order they were to ſit, and charged them to do as they ſaw me do; but to keep rather a half Pace backwarder than me; and then ſitting down in my Chair, I ordered *Pedro* to his Stool

on my Right-hand, and *Jemmy* to his on my Left, and *David* to the Left of *Jemmy*.

I then ſent two of the Meſſengers to meet them, with Inſtructions to let *Youwarkee* know where I waited for them, that they might alight at a ſmall Diſtance before they came to me. This ſhe having communicated to her Father, the Order ran through the whole Corps immediately, when and where to alight.

It will be impoſſible for me, by Words, to raiſe your Ideas adequate to the Grandeur of the Appearance this Body of Men made, coming over the Rock; but, as I perceive your Curioſity is on the Stretch to comprehend it, I ſhall faintly aim at gratifying you.

After we had heard, for ſome time, a Sound as of diſtant rumbling Thunder, or of a thouſand Bears in Conſort, ſerenading in their hoarſeſt Voices, we could juſt perceive, by the Clearneſs of the Dawn gilding the Edge of the Rock, a black Stream ariſe above the Summit of it, ſeemingly about forty Paces broad; when the Noiſe increaſing very much, the Stream aroſe broader and broader; and then you might perceive Rows of Poles, with here and there a Streamer; and as ſoon as ever the main Body appeared above the Rock, there was ſuch an univerſal Shout, as rent the Air, and echoing from the oppoſite Rock, returned the Salute to them again. This was ſucceeded with a moſt raviſhing Sound of Voices,

in

in Song, which continued till they came pretty near me; and then the firſt Line, conſiſting of all the Trumpets, mounting a conſiderable Height, and ſtill blowing, left Room for the next Ranks, about twenty a-breaſt, to come forward beneath them; each of which dividing in the Middle, alighted in Ranks, at about twenty Paces Diſtance from my Right and Left, making a Lane before me, at the farther End of which *Pendlehamby* and his two Daughters alighted, with about twenty of his Guards behind them; the Remainder, conſiſting of about twenty more, coming forward over my Head, and alighting behind me; and during this whole Ceremony, the Gripſacks ſounded with ſuch a Din, it was aſtoniſhing.

Poor *Youwarkee*, who knew nothing of my Dreſs, or of the Loſs of my Beard, was Thunderſtruck when ſhe ſaw me, not being able to obſerve any Viſage I had, for my great Wig, and Hat; but putting a good Face on the matter, and not doubting, but if the Perſon ſhe ſaw was not me, ſhe ſhould ſoon find her Huſband, for ſhe knew the Children by their Cloaths, ſhe came forward at her Father's Right-hand, I ſitting as great as a Lord, till they came within about thirty Paces of my Seat; and then gravely riſing, I pulled off my Hat, and made my Obeiſance; and again, at ten Steps forwarder: So that I made my third low Bow, cloſe at the Feet of *Pendlehamby*; the Children all doing the ſame. I then kneeling with

one

one Leg, embraced his Right-knee; who raiſing me up, embraced me. Then retiring three Steps, and coming forward again, I embraced *Youwarkee*, ſome time; during which, the Children obſerved my Pattern with *Pendlehamby*, who took them up, and kiſſed them.

I whiſpered *Youwarkee*, to know if any more of her Relations were in the Train, to whom I ought to pay my Compliments; ſhe told me, only her Siſter *Hallycarnie*, juſt behind her Father: I then ſaluted her, and ſtepping forward to the old Gentleman's Left-hand, I uſhered him thro' the Lines of Guards to my Chair; where I cauſed him to ſit down, with *Youwarkee*, and *Hallycarnie* on each ſide, and myſelf on the left of *Hallycarnie*.

After expreſſing the great Honour done me by *Pendlehamby* in this Viſit; I told him, I had a little Grotto, about half a Mile thro' the Wood, to which if he pleaſed to command, we would retire; for I had only placed that Seat, to relieve him, immediately upon his Deſcent.

Pendlehamby roſe, and all the Gripſacks ſounded; he leading *Youwarkee* in his Right-hand, and I *Hallycarnie* in mine.

At the Grotto, my Father being ſeated, taking *Youwarkee* in my Hand, we paid our Obedience to him. I would have aſked his Pardon, for taking his Daughter to Wife without his Leave, and was going on in a ſet Speech, I had ſtudied for the Purpoſe: But he refuſed to hear me, telling me I

was

was miſtaken, he had conſented. I was replying, I knew he had been ſo good to paſs it over, but that would not excuſe—when he again interrupted me, by ſaying, if I approve it, and eſteem you, what can you deſire more; ſo, finding the Subject ungrateful, I deſiſted.

I then gave each of them a ſilver Can of *Madiera*, and *Youwarkee* retired. I ſoon made an Excuſe to follow her, to learn if ſhe was pleaſed with what I had done. Says ſhe, my deareſt, what is come to you; I'll promiſe you, but for fear of ſurprizing my Father, I had diſowned you for my Huſband. Dear *Youwee*, ſays I, do you approve my Dreſs, for this is the *Engliſh* Faſhion. This, *Peter*, ſays ſhe, I perceived attracted all Eyes to you, and indeed is very ſhowy, and I approve it in regard to thoſe we are now to pleaſe; but, you are not to imagine I eſteem you more in this, than your own old Jacket; for it is *Peter* I love, in this, and all things elſe; but ſtep in again, I ſhall only dreſs, and come to you.

My Wife, being dreſſed in her *Engliſh* Gown, juſt croſſed the Room where my Father ſat, to ſee *Dicky*, who was in another ſide Room. I was then ſetting by, and talking with him. Son, ſays my Father, I underſtood you had no other Woman in this Arkoe, but my Daughter; for ſurely, you have no Child ſo tall as that, pointing to my Wife. No Sir, ſaid I, that is a Friend. Is ſhe come to you,

you, ſays he, in my Daughter's Abſence? O Sir, ſays I, ſhe is very well known to my Wife.

Whilſt we were talking, in comes *Youwarkee*, with the Child in her Arms, which ſhe kept covered to her Wriſts, with her Gown-ſleeve, to hide her Graundee; and, playing with the Child, talked only *Engliſh* to it. Is this your youngeſt Son? ſays my Father. I told him yes. Pray Madam, ſays I, bring the Child to my Father. Madam, ſays he, you have a fine Baby in your Arms, has his Mother ſeen him ſince ſhe came home? He ſpeaking this in his own Tongue, and *Youwarkee* looking at me, as if ſhe could not underſtand him, I interpreted it to her. My Siſter then deſired to ſee the Child, but I was forced again to interpret, there too. In ſhort, they both talked with my Wife near half an Hour, but neither of them knew her; till at laſt, ſaying in her own Language, that is your Grand-daddy, my dear *Dicky*; the old Gentleman ſmoked her out; I'll be ſlit, ſays he, if that is not *Youwarkee*. Its impoſſible, ſays *Hallycarnie*. Indeed Siſter, ſays *Youwarkee*, you are miſtaken; and my Father, proteſting he had not the leaſt Suſpicion of her, till ſhe ſpoke in his Tongue, roſe, and kiſſing her, and the Child, deſired her to appear in that Habit during his Stay.

I aſked *Pedro* what Proviſion had been made for the Guards. Son, ſays my Father, I bring not this Number of People to eat you up; they have

have their Subſiſtance with them; and he would by no means ſuffer me to allow them any. I then deſired to know if there were any Officers, or others, to whom he would have ſhewn any particular Marks of Diſtinction. Son, ſays the old Glumm, you ſeem to have ſtudied Punctillios; and tho' I ſhould be ſorry to incommode you for their ſakes, if you could procure ſome Shelter, and Sleep-room, for about twenty of them, who are Superiors, ten at a time, while the reſt are on Duty, I ſhould be glad. I told him, I had purpoſely erected a Tent, which would, with great eaſe, accomodate a greater number; and as they were of Diſtinction, with his Leave, I inſiſted upon providing for them; to which, with ſome Reluctance, I procured his Conſent.

When *Pendlehamby* was refreſhed, he would go with me, to ſee the Officers Quarters; and ſhewing him my Tent, he, having never ſeen ſuch a thing before, was going to climb up the Out-ſide of it, taking it for Earth. Hold Sir, ſaid I, you can't do ſo: Then taking him to the Front of it, I turned aſide the blue Cloth, and deſired him to walk in; at which he ſeemed wonderfully pleaſed, and aſked me how it was made. I told him, in as few Words as I could; but he underſtood ſo little of it, that any thing elſe I had ſaid, might have done as well. He mightily approved it, and calling the chief Officer, told him, that was their Quarters. Then, turning to the Officer, I deſired he would command

command my Houſe, and that Proviſion ſhould be ſupplied to his Quarters daily; at which, he heſitating; I aſſured him, I had my Father's Leave for what I offered; whereupon, he ſtroked his Chin.

I then aſked him, if he had any clever Fellows under him, to ſerve them, and dreſs their Proviſions; but, he hoped, he ſaid, they were ready dreſſed, as his Men knew little of that Matter; but for any other piece of Service, as many as I pleaſed, ſhould be at my Command.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Manner of their Dinner; believe the Fiſh and Fowl to be Fruits; hears his Brother and the Colambs *are coming; Account of their lying;* Peter's *Reflections on the want of the Graundee; they view the Arkoe; Servants harder to pleaſe than their Maſters; Reaſon for different Dreſſes the ſame Day.*

PENDLEHAMBY, having a mind to view my Arkoe, took a long Walk with *Hallycarnie* in the Wood, till Dinner-time; and, he having before told me, that ſome of his Guards always waited on him at Meals; I ordered their Dinner before his Return, ſending a large Diſh of cold Fowls, cut into Joints, into the Tent, to be ſpread on clean Leaves I had laid on the Cheſts, and ſetting a ſufficient Quantity of Bread, and Fiſh there alſo, I deſired the Officers preſent to refeſh themſelves now; and the reſt, when relieved, ſhould have a freſh Supply. I ſaw there was an Oddity in their Countenances, which at firſt, I did not comprehend; but preſently turning about to the Superior, Sir, ſays I, tho' this Food may look unuſual to you, it is what my Iſland affords, and you'll be better reconciled to it, after taſting: So, taking a Piece of Fowl, and dipping it in the Salt, I eat a bit myſelf, and recommended another to him; who, eating it, they all

all fell to without further Scruple: Above all things commending the Salt, as what they had never tasted the like of before, tho' they thought they had, both of the Fish, and Fowl.

I then told them where my Supply of Water came from, and that they must furnish themselves with that, by their own Men.

Upon the Return of my Father, and Sister, the Gripsack sounded for Dinner; when four Officers on Duty, entring, desired, as their Posts, to have the serving up of the Dishes; one of them, I perceived, having set on the first Dish, never stirred from behind *Pendlehamby*; but upon his least Word, or Sign, ordered the others what to do, or bring, which he only presented to my Father; and he frequently gave him a Piece from his own Plate; but the other Officers served at the Table promiscuously.

After Dinner, I brought in a Bowl of Punch; when, begging leave to proceed in my Country Method, I drank to my Father's Health. So, Daughter, says he to my Wife, we are at the old Game again. Son, says he, this is no Novelty to me, *Youwarkee* constantly drinking to the Health of her dear *Peter*, and the Children at *Grandevolet*, and obliging us, to pledge her, as she called it; but I thank you, and will return your Civility: So, taking a Glass, Son and Daughter, says he, long Life, Love, and Unity attend you, and my Grandchildren. *Youwarkee*, and I, both rising till he had done, returned him our Thanks.

When

When we had ſat ſome time, Son, ſays my Father, you and your Wife having lived ſo retired, I fear my Company, and Attendants, muſt put you to an Inconvenience: Now, as my Son intends you a Viſit alſo, in Company with ſeveral of my Brother *Colambs*; if we ſhall be too great a Load upon you, declare it, for they will be at *Battingdrig* Arkoe To-morrow, to know whether it will be agreeable for them to proceed.

You know Son, ſays my Father, the Mouth is a great Devourer, and that the Stock your Family can't conſume in a Year, by multiplying their Numbers may be reduced in a Day; now freely let me know, for you ſay you provided for us, how your Stock ſtands; that you may not only pleaſure us, but we not injure you.

I told him, as for dried Fiſh, I had a vaſt Quantity, and that my Fowls were ſo numerous, I knew not my Stock; as to Bread, I had a great deal, and might have almoſt what more I would; and then for freſh Fiſh, the whole Province of *Arndrumſtake* could not ſoon devour them; but for my Pickles, and Preſerves, I had neither ſuch large Quantities, or Conveniencies to beſtow them, if I had.

If this be the Caſe Son, ſays my Father, I may ſend your Brother Word to proceed; and diſpatched ten Meſſengers with a Gripſack, to haſten his Son's Arrival.

It now began to be time for Reſt, and the old Gentleman growing pretty mellow, with the Punch; which, by the hearty Pulls he took at it, I perceived was no diſagreeable Entertainment to him; I conducted him to his Repoſe, and diſpoſing of the reſt of the Family, *Youwarkee* and I, with great Impatience retired.

You may imagine, I was ſincerely glad to find myſelf once more alone with my *Youwarkee*; when, after a Tranſport of mutual Endearments, I deſired to know how *Pendlehamby* firſt received her; which ſhe told me, with every Circumſtance, in ſo affecting a Manner, that the Tears forced Paſſage from my Eyes, in perfect Streams, and I loved the dear Man ever after, as my own Father.

She told me, *Tommy* was in great Favour at Court, before her Brother returned from me; but, ever ſince I ſent him the Flagellet, he had been careſſed above meaſure, and would ſoon be a great Man. That *Hallycarnie*, was a conſtant Attendant on *Jahamel*, both in her Diverſions, and Retirement; and ſhe did not doubt, would in time, marry very well. As for *Patty*, ſhe ſaid her Father intended, with my Leave, to adopt her his own Child.

My Wife ſlept very ſound after her Journey; but, my Hurry of Spirits denying me that Refreſhment, I never, ſo much as now, lamented the want of the Graundee; for thinks I, now I have once again taſted the Sweets of Society, how ſhall

I ever reliſh a total Deſertion of it, which in a few Days muſt be the Caſe, when all this Company are fled, and myſelf am reduced to my old Jacket, and Water-cart again. Now, if I was as others here are, I might make a better Figure than they, by my ſuperior Knowledge of things, and have the World my own: Nay, I would fly to my own Country, or to ſome other part of the World; where, even the Strangeneſs of my Appearance would procure me a good Subſiſtance. But, ſays I, if with my Graundee I ſhould looſe my Sight, or only be able to live in the Dark in *England?* why I ſhould be full as bad as I am here; for no Body would be able to keep me Company abroad, as my Hours for the Air would be theirs of Retirement; and then, at home, it would be much the ſame; no one would prefer my Company in a dark Room, in the Day-time, when they could enjoy others in the Light of the Sun; then, how ſhould I be the better for the Graundee? Unleſs I fixed a Reſolution of living here, or here-abouts; and then, to get into Company, I muſt retire to ſtill darker Regions, which my Eyes are no ways adapted to; in ſhort, I muſt be quite new moulded, new made, and new born too, before I can attain my Deſires. Therefore, *Peter*, ſays I, be content, you have been happy here, in your Wife and Children without theſe things; then never make yourſelf ſo wretched, as to hope for a Change which can never poſſibly happen, and which, perhaps,

perhaps, if obtained, might undo you; but, intend only what you can compaſs, by weighing all Circumſtances, and your Felicity will lie in very narrow Bounds; free, from two of the greateſt Evils a Man can be beſet by, Hopes, and Fears; two inſeperable Companions, and deadly Enemies to Peace: For a Man is deſtroyed by Hope, thro' Fear of Diſappointment. This brought me a Shew of Peace again; ſurely, ſays I, I am one of the moſt unaccountable amongſt Mankind: I never can reflect, till I am worn down with Vexation. O *Glaulepze*, *Glaulepze!* ſays I, I ſhall never forget thy Speech after engaging the Crocodile; that every thing was to be attained by Reſolution, by him that takes both Ends of a thing in his View at once, and fairly deliberates what may be given, and taken, from End to End. Surely, ſays I, this ought to be engraven on Braſs, as I wiſh it was on my Heart; it would prevent me many painful Hours, help me with more Eaſe to compaſs attainable Ends, and to reſt contented, under Difficulties inſuperable: And, if I live to riſe again, I will place it, where it ſhall never more be out of my Sight, and will enforce it, not only more and more on myſelf, but on my Children.

With this Thought, I dropped on Sleep, and with this, I awaked again; and the firſt thing I did, was to find a proper Place to write it, which, having fixed for the Door of my Cupboard, I took a burnt Stick, for my Pencil, and wrote as follows.

" He that is reſolved to overcome, muſt have " both Ends of an Object in View at once, and " fairly deliberate what may be given, and taken, " from End to End; and then purſue the Dictates " of cool Reaſon." This, I wrote firſt in *Engliſh*, and then in the *Doorpt Swangeantine* Tongue; and, having read it twice or thrice over, I went for Water, and Fiſh, and returned before the Family were up.

I took care To-day alſo, that the Officers ſhould be as well ſerved as poſſible, and where an Accomodation muſt be wanting, I rather choſe to let it fall on my Father, than on them; for I had ever obſerved it to be an eaſier thing, to ſatisfy the Maſter than the Man; as the Maſter weighs Circumſtances, and from a natural Complaiſancy in himſelf, puts a humane Conſtruction upon that Error, or Omiſſion, which the Servant wholly attributes to Slight, and Neglect.

My Company being abroad, about the Time I expected their Return, I dreſſed myſelf as the Day before, only without my Cloak, and in a black Bob-wig; and took a Turn to meet them.

Pendlehamby, ſpying me firſt among the Trees, Daughter *Youwarkee*, ſays he, you have an Huſband, I think, for every Day in the Week; who's this, my Son *Peter?* Why, he is not the ſame Man he was Yeſterday. She told him, ſhe had heard me ſay, we changed our Apparel almoſt every Day in *England*; nay, ſometimes twice, or thrice

thrice the ſame Day. What? ſays *Pendlehamby*, are they ſo miſchievous there, they are fearful of being known in the latter, by thoſe who ſaw them in the former Part of the Day?

By this time I was come up, and after paying due Compliments, ſays *Youwarkee*, my Father did not know you, my Dear, you are ſo altered in your other Wig; and I told him, in your Country, they not only change Wigs, but their whole Cloathing, two or three times a Day, ſometimes. Son, ſays my Father, if it be ſo, I can't gueſs at the Deſign, of a Man's making himſelf, unlike himſelf. O, Sir, ſays I, it is owing to the different Functions he is to perform, that Day: As ſuppoſe, in the Morning he is to purſue Buſineſs, with his Inferiors, or meet at our Coffee-Houſes, to hear, and chat over the News of the Day: He appears in a light, eaſy Habit, proper for Diſpatch, and comes home dirty. Then, perhaps, he is to dine with a Friend at Mid-day; before whom, for Reſpect's ſake, not chuſing to be ſeen in his dirty Dreſs, he puts on ſomething handſomer; and, after ſpending ſome time there; he has, it may be, an Appointment at Court, a Play, or with his Miſtreſs; in all which laſt Caſes, if he has any thing better than ordinary, it is a part of good Breeding to appear in that: But, if the very beſt was to be uſed in common, it might ſoon become the worſt, and not fit for a nice Man to ſtir abroad in. The different Cuſtom of Countries, you have told

told me of, ſays my Father, is ſurprizing. Here are we born with our Cloaths on, which always fit, be we ever ſo ſmall, or large; nay, are never the worſe for conſtant wearing; and you muſt be eternally altering, and changing Colour, Shape, and Habit: But, ſays he, where do they get all theſe things? Does every Man make juſt what he likes? No, ſays I, there are a particular Set of Men, whoſe Buſineſs it is to make for all the reſt. What? ſays he, I ſuppoſe their Laſks [Slaves] make them. No Sir, they are Filgays, [Freemen] ſays I. It is their Trade, they do it for a Livelihood, being paid by them they work for. A Suit of theſe Cloaths, ſays I, taking up the Flap of my Coat, will coſt what we call twelve or fourteen Pounds in Money. I don't underſtand you, ſays he. Why Sir, ſays I, that is as much, as will provide one moderate Man with all the neceſſary things of Life for two Months. Then, ſays he, theſe nice Men muſt be very rich. No, Sir, ſaid I, there you are under a Miſtake; for if a Man, very rich, and who is known to be ſo, neglects his Habit, it is taken to be his Choice; but, one who is not known to be rich, and is really not ſo, is by appearing gay ſometimes thought to be ſo; for he comes little abroad, and pinches miſerably at home; firſt to get that gay Suit, and then acts on the ſame part to preſerve it; till ſome lucky hit may help him to the Means of getting another;

as it frequently happens, by a good Marriage: For tho' he is but ſeldom ſeen in public, yet always appearing ſo fine when he is, the Ladies, whoſe Fancies are frequently more tickled with Shew than Senſe, admitting him only at firſt as a Companion, are at laſt, if worth any thing, taken in the Toils he is ever ſpreading for them; and, becoming his Wife, produce a ſtanding Fund to make him a rich Man in reality, which he but perſonated before.

Pendlehamby could not well underſtand all I ſaid; and I found by him, that all the Riches they poſſeſſed were only Food and Slaves; and, as I found afterwards when amongſt them, they know the want of nothing elſe: But, I am afraid, I have put them upon another way of thinking, tho' I aimed at what we call civiziling of them.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Quangrallort *arrives with the* Colambs; *ſtreightned for Accommodation*; *remove to the Tent*; Youwarkee *not known*; Peter *relates Part of his Travels*; *Diſpute about the Beaſt-Fiſh Skins.*

SLEEPING longer than uſual, I was awakened next Morning by a Gripſack from *Quangrallort*; upon hearing of which, I rouſed immediately, thinking they were at my Door; but the Meſſenger told me, they could not be there in what I underſtood by his Signs to be about two Hours; for they have no ſuch Meaſure for Time, as Hours: So I dreſſed at leiſure, and then went to *Youwarkee*, and waked her; *Youwee*, ſays I, your Brother will be here preſently, and I having a mind you ſhould appear as my Country-woman, would have you dreſs yourſelf.

We walked down to the Level, and but juſt ſaved our Diſtance; for the Van of them were within the Arkoe before we arrived, and with ſuch a Train after them, as ſeemed to reach the whole Length of the Arkoe. The Regularity and Order of their Flight was admirable, and the Break of the Trumpets ſo great, ſounding all the way they came, (for we had not only one Set of them, but at leaſt thirty, there being ſo many

Colambs and petty Princes in the Train, each with fifty Attendants) that I wondered how they could bear it. As the Principals alighted, which was at leaſt an hundred Paces from me, the Gripſacks ſtill kept Wing, ſounding as long as we ſtayed.

This, was a very tedious Ceremony, for the Guards alighting with their *Colambs*, ranged juſt as *Pendlebamby*'s had done, but reached as far as the Eye could ſee. As they moved towards us, *Youwarkee*, and I, having ſtood ſtill ſome time, moved ſlowly forward to meet them.

It would have ſurprized you, to have ſeen the Deference they paid us; and, I believe, the Guards took us for ſomething above the mortal Race. *Youwarkee* ſhewed no part of her Graundee, having her Sleeves down to her Wriſts, white Silk Stockings, and red-heeled Shoes; ſo that none of them knew her for one of them.

The firſt that we met was my Brother, to whom we had only an Opportunity of paying our Compliments *en paſſant*, before another Grandee came up, who was ſucceeded by another, and another, to the number of thirty; ſome out of Reſpect to my Father and Brother, and ſome out of mere Curioſity to ſee me; and as faſt as each had paid his Salutes, he paſſed us, till we found we had no more to meet; when we turned about, and fell in with the Company.

When we came to the Grotto, I was very much put to it for Room, we ſcarce being able to ſtand upright by each other, much leſs to ſit down; which my Father perceiving, my dear Friends, ſays he, had my Son known, in time, of ſo much good Company, he would have been better provided with Seats for us all; but conſidering all we ſee is the Labour only of his own Hands, we ſhould rather admire at the many Conveniencies we ſee here, than be uneaſy there are no more: And, Son, ſays he, as we are now ſo large a Body, I propoſe that we adjourn to the Officers Quarters, and let them take ours. I returned my Father Thanks for the Hint, and led the way, the reſt following; where we found Room enough and to ſpare.

Tho' *Youwarkee* was with us all Dinner-time, helping the Gueſts, we had no ſooner done, but ſays *Quangrallort*, aloud, Brother *Peter*, are we not to ſee my Siſter? I not hearing perfectly what he ſaid, tho' I perceived he ſpoke to me; Sir, ſays I. My Siſter *Youwarkee*, ſays he, why won't ſhe appear? here are ſeveral of her good Friends, as well as myſelf, will be glad to ſee her. My Father then laughed ſo heartily, that the reſt taking notice of it, my poor Brother was put to the Bluſh. Son, ſays my Father, don't you know your own Siſter? We have not ſeen her yet, ſays one of the *Colambs*, or any Lady, but your Daughter *Hallycarnie*, and that Atten-

dant. My Brother, then ſeeing how it was, came up to ſalute my Wife; but even then had his Scruples, till he ſaw her ſmile; and then begged Pardon for his Overſight, as did all the *Colambs*, upon ſaluting her: My Brother declaring, that as ſhe was ſomewhat behind me on the Level, he had only paid her the Reſpect of his Chin, taking her for ſome one attending me. The *Colamb* following my Brother, aſſured her, the little Regard ſhewn her by *Quangrallort*, who he thought ſhould know beſt where to beſtow his Reſpects, was the Reaſon of his taking no more Notice of her; and each, confeſſing his Miſtake aroſe from too nearly copying the Steps of his immediate Predeceſſor, they all made excuſe, and the Miſtake made us very merry, till they propoſed taking a Turn in the Woods, it being a great Novelty to them, they ſaid; but I begged they would leave me behind, to prepare for their Return.

Having refreſhed themſelves after they came home, *Quangrallort*, being put upon it by ſome of the *Colambs*, told me, I could not render a more acceptable Favour to the whole Company, than to relate to them an Account of my Adventures; for tho', ſays he, I told them laſt Night what I remembered to have heard from you; yet the Variety was ſo great, I could not deliver the Facts in Order, as I heard them, but was obliged to take here a-piece, and there another, as they occurred

occurred to me, making rather ſeveral Stories of it, than a continued Series of Facts.

All the *Colambs* immediately ſeconded the Motion, and deſired me to begin. I then ordering a clear Table, and a Bowl of Punch, and having drank all the Company's Healths, began my Narration, hoping to have finiſhed it before Bed-time; but they preſſing me to be very particular, and frequently one or other requiring Explanations upon particular Facts; and then one making a Remark upon ſomething, which another anſwering, and a third replying to; they got the Talk out of my Hands, ſo long, that having loſt themſelves in the Argument, and forgot what I ſaid laſt, they begged my Pardon, and deſired me to go on: When one, who in Contemplation of one Fact had loſt beſt part of another, prayed me to go on from ſuch an Incident, and another from one before that; ſo that I was frequently obliged to begin, half way back again. This Method not only ſpun out my Story to a very great Length, but inſtead of its being finiſhed that Evening, as I had purpoſed, it was ſcarce well begun before Bed-time drew on: So I juſt having brought them to *Angola*, told them, as it grew late, if they pleaſed, I would finiſh the Remainder next Night; which they agreed to.

Quangrallort then aſked my Father, if he had been fiſhing ſince he came; but he told-him, he knew not what he meant. Then all the Com-

pany deſired I would ſhew them what that was. I told them they might command me as they pleaſed; ſo we appointed the next Morning for that Exerciſe; but, Gentlemen, ſays I, your Lodging to Night gives me the greateſt Pain; for I know not what I ſhall do about that. I have a few Beaſt-Fiſh Skins, which are very ſoft and hairy, but not a Sufficiency for ſo many Friends as I would at preſent be proud to oblige: But I can lay them as far as they will go, upon as much dry Reeds and Graſs as you pleaſe. I then ſent a Servant to *Youwarkee* for the Skins; after which, they one and all crying out, if they had but good dry Reeds, they deſired no better Lodging: I diſpatched Hands, to bring away a large Parcel of it to the Tent; which they did in a trice. Then waiting on thoſe few who lay at the Grotto to their Quarters, and having ſent *Youwarkee* to her Siſter, I returned to the Tent, to take up my own Lodging with thoſe I had left there.

I had not yet entred the Tent, when I heard a perfect Tumult within, every one talking ſo loud, and all together, that I verily thought they had fallen out, and were going to Handy-cuffs; however, I reſolved to go in amongſt them, and try to compoſe their Difference: When juſt entring, and they ſpying me, ſeveral ran to me, with each a Skin in his Hand, the reſt following as faſt as they could. Gentlemen, ſays I, I hoped to have found you all at Reſt. So we ſhould

ſhould have been, ſays one of them, but for theſe, what you call 'ems. It is my unſpeakable Misfortune, ſays I, that I have no more at your Service, and am ſorry I ſhould cauſe them to be brought, ſince each of you can't have one. Says one of them, I don't want one, I have ſeen enough of it. Then, Gentlemen, ſays I, it is poſſible there may be ſo many more of that *Colamb*'s Mind, that there may be ſufficient for thoſe who deſire them. They neither knew what to make of me, or I of them, all this while; till an old *Colamb* perceiving our Miſtake, Mr. *Peter*, ſays he, we have only had a Diſpute——I am ſorry at my Heart for it, ſays I; but I perceived you were very warm, before I entred, and am in great Hopes of compromiſing Matters, to all your Satisfactions. I was going, ſays the ſame *Colamb*, to tell you we had a Diſpute about what theſe Things were, nothing elſe. I was then ſtruck on a Heap, being quite aſhamed they ſhould think I ſuſpected they had been quarrelling for the Skins; and how to come of, I knew not. You'll excuſe me Sir, ſays I, for expreſſing a Concern that you could not each have one, to examine into at the ſame time, that one of you need not have waited to make your Remarks, till the other had done. No Occaſion, no Occaſion for that, Mr. *Peter*, ſaid they all together; we ſhall have Leiſure enough to examine them to-morrow; but we want to know what they

are, and where they grow. Gentlemen, ſays I, each of theſe is the Cloathing of a particular Fiſh. And where do they grow, ſaid they? In the Lake, ſays I; they are a living Creature, who inhabit that great Water; I often catch them when I am fiſhing; the ſame Exerciſe we ſhall go upon to-morrow.

I had much ado to perſuade them they did not grow on Trees, which I was then much more ſurprized at, than ſome time after, that I returned their Viſit: But having ſatisfied them, and given them ſome poſſible Hopes they might ſee one alive next Day, they were very well contented; and we all lay down to Reſt.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Go a fiſhing; catch a Beaſt-Fiſh; afraid of the Gun; how Peter *altered his Net; a Fiſh-dinner for the Guards; Method of dreſſing and eating it.*

I Appeared before them in the Morning in my old Jacket, and an old Hat with Brims indented almoſt to the Crown, a Flannel Night-cap, and checker'd Shirt. How now Son? ſays my Father, what have we here? Sir, ſays I, this will ſhew you the Uſe of our *Engliſh* Faſhion I mentioned the other Day, and the Neceſſity of it. You ſee me in this indifferent Habit, becauſe my next Buſineſs requires it; but when I come back, and have no further Dirty-work to do, I ſhall then dreſs, as near as I can, to qualify me for your Company.

Are you for moving Gentlemen? ſays my Brother; I believe it is time: They then all ariſing, we went to the Lake; where getting into my Boat, and telling them, that any ſix of them might go with me, they, never having ſeen ſuch a thing before, and not much liking the Looks of it, all made Excuſes; till my Brother, aſſuring them it was very ſafe, and that he had ſailed in it the laſt Trip, three or four of them, with my Father, and *Hallycarnie*, who was very deſirous

deſirous of ſeeing me fiſh, got in; and we ſailed a great way up the Lake, taking my Gun as uſual with me.

It gave me exceeding Delight, to ſee the whole Body of the People then in the Arkoe on the Graundee; ſome hovering over our Heads, and talking with us; others flying this way, others that, till I had pitched upon a Spot to begin my Operation; when rowing to Shoar, and quitting my Boat, the whole Body of People ſettled juſt by me, ſtaring at me and my Net, and wondering what I was doing. I then taking a Sweep as uſual, got ſome of the Soldiers to aſſiſt me to Shoar with it; but, when the Cod of the Net landed, and the Fiſh began to daſh with their Tails at the Water's Edge, away ran all my Soldiers, frighted out of their Wits to think what was coming: But it being a large Hale, and a ſhelving Bank, I could not lift it to the Level myſelf; which, my Brother, who had ſeen the Sport before, perceiving, tho' not one of the reſt ſtirred, lent me a Hand, and we got it up.

You can't imagine, what Surprize appeared in every Face upon opening the Net, and ſeeing all the Fiſh naked; they drew up by degrees cloſer and cloſer, for I let the Fiſh lie ſome time for their Obſervation; but ſeeing the large Fiſh, upon my handling them, flap their Tails, they very expeditiouſly retired again. I then, toſſed ſeveral of them into the Boat; but two of them being

being very large, and rough-ſcaled ugly Fiſh, I did not think I could lift them myſelf, ſo deſired Aſſiſtance; but no body ſtirred: I expected ſome of the *Colambs* would have ordered their Men to have helped me; but they were ſo terrified with ſeeing me handle them, that they could not have the Conſcience to order their Men on ſo ſevere a Duty, till a common Man came to me, and taking the Tail, and I the Head, we toſſed them both into the Boat.

I went higher up the Lake than uſual, in hopes of a Beaſt-Fiſh, to ſhew them; but, tho' I could not meet with one, I had ſeveral very great Hales, and took three or four of my Lobſters, very large ones. This was the ſecond Trial I had made of my Net, ſince I had altered it, and gave me great Satisfaction; for I could now take as many Fiſh at one Draught, as I could before have done at ten; I had found, that tho' my Net was very long, yet for want of a Bag, or Cod to incloſe the Fiſh, many that were included within its Compaſs would, whilſt I drew round, ſwim to the Extreams, and ſo get out, for want of ſome Inlet to enter at; for which reaſon, I ſawed off the Top of a Tree, at about ten Feet from the Ground, and drawing a Circle of ſix Feet Diameter round the Tree, on the Ground, I ſtuck it round with ſmall Pegs, at two Inches Diſtance; then I drove the like Number of Nails round the Top of the Trunk of the Tree,

and

and ſtraining a Length of Matline from each Peg on the Ground to a correſpondent Nail on the Tree, I tied my Matline in Circles round the ſtrained Lines, from Top to Bottom, about two Inches Diſtance at the Bottom, but at a leſs Diſtance where the ſtrained Lines grew nearer to each other towards the Top; and having ſecured all the Ends, by ſome Line twiſted round them, I cut a Hole in the Middle of my Net, and tied the large Ground End over the Hole in the Net, and gathered the ſmall End up in a Purſe, tying it up tight; and by this means, I now ſcarce loſt any Fiſh, which once were within the Sweep of my Net.

Having had ſo good Succeſs, I had a Deſign of returning; but thought, as I could now ſo eaſily entertain a Multitude, I might as well take another Hale or two, and make an handſome Treat for the Soldiery: Then coming up to my Drill's Mouth, I fixed my Implements for a Draft there, and beginning to draw up, I found great Reſiſtance in the Net, and got two or three to help me; but, coming near Shoar, when the Company ſaw the Net tumble and roll, and riſe and fall, they all ran as if they were mad; till I called them, and told the *Colambs*, it was only one of the Fiſh whoſe Skins I had ſhewn them; upon which, by that time I had diſcharged the Fiſh from the Net, they were all round me again. But, no ſooner had he got looſe, than up he roſe, whirled

whirled his Wings, and at the ſame Inſtant uttered ſuch a Groan, that my whole Company retreated again, thinking me ſomewhat more than a Man, who could face ſo dreadful an Enemy. I intreated them to come and view it; but finding no Arguments could bring them nearer, I edged round till I got him between me and the Water, and ſhot him dead.

Upon the Report of my Gun, the whole Field was in the Air, darting and ſcreaming, as I have often ſeen a Flight of Rooks do on the ſame Occaſion; and I am apt to believe ſome of them never returned again, but went directly home.

I was a little concerned to ſee the Confuſion I had cauſed; and laying down my Gun, my Brother, who tho' at a Diſtance when I ſhot, knowing what I was at, and coming up to me, it put the reſt upon their Conſideration; and they alighted one by one, at a Diſtance, till they were all on the Level again.

My Father, and the *Colambs*, who were the firſt that durſt approach, wondered what I had done, and how the Fiſh came to be dead, and whence ſo much Fire and Smoak proceeded, for they were ſure I brought none with me; and aſked me abundance of Queſtions: But, as I knew I muſt have Occaſion for anſwering to the ſame thing twenty times over, had I entred upon an Explanation there, I deferred giving them Satisfaction till we came home; when all at

once might be capable of hearing what was ſaid. So, I told them, the moſt neceſſary thing at preſent was, to ſtow the Fiſh in the Boat; for it was the largeſt I had ever taken, and I could not wholly do it myſelf. I made ſeveral Efforts for Help, but in vain; till the ſame Soldier who had helped me with one of the firſt Fiſh came to my Relief, and, deſiring my Orders what to do, aſſiſted me; and the reſt ſeeing the Difficulty we both had to manage it, one or two more of them coming up, we ſhipped it on board.

I then called the *Colambs* to me, telling them, I was ſorry I had given ſuch a general Diſturbance to them, by ſhooting the Fiſh; but, as they kept at too great a Diſtance from me to have Notice of my Deſign, and if I had followed them the Fiſh might have eſcaped before my Return, I was obliged to do as I did; which was without any poſſibility of hurting them: But, as I had given them ſuch a Fright, I hoped they would this one Day give me an Opportunity of complimenting their Guards with a Fiſh-dinner, if we could any way contrive to dreſs it; for whoever did that muſt be able to bear the cloſe Light of a large Fire. They all ſhook their Heads, but my Brother; who told me, he had in his Retinue ſix Men from Mount *Alkoe* [a burning Mountain] purpoſely retained for their ſtrong Sight, to attend him always to *Craſhdoarpt*; who, he believed, for the Benefit of the reſt, would

would undertake the Cookery, if I would ſhew them how. I deſired he would give them Orders to attend me on the other Side the Lake, and I would inſtruct them at my landing; and then I croſſed over with my Booty.

Finding the Mount *Alkoe* Men waiting for my landing, I aſked if they could bear the Sight of Fire. They told me, they were uſed to much greater Light and Flames than I had ever ſeen, they believed. Very good, ſaid I, then get into my Boat, three of you, and hand out that Fiſh to the Shore. I found they were more afraid of the Fiſh than of the Fire; for not one of them ſtirred till I got in and toſſed out ſeveral ſmall ones; and then taking up a large one, help me ſome body, ſays I, they looking a little at one another; till one of them venturing to take it, the reſt fell heartily to work, and diſpatched the whole Lading preſently. I then laid a ſmall Parcel upon my Cart, for our own eating, and the Officers, and ſending them to the Grotto, I gave the Cooks their Charge.

Now, ſays I, my Lads, do you ſerve all the reſt of the Fiſh as I do this; cutting it open at the ſame time, and throwing away the Guts, and I will ſend each of you ſuch an Inſtrument as I uſe here, pointing to my Knife. I ſhall order ſix large Heaps of Wood to the Level, to be piled up there: When you have done the Fiſh,

do

do you ſet fire to the Heaps, and let them burn till the Flame is over, and the Coals are clear; then lay on your Fiſh, and if any are too large to be managable, cut them in proper Pieces, and with Sticks, which I will ſend you, turn them over and over, walking round the Fire, and with the forked End of the Stick toſs the leaſt off firſt, and afterwards the greater; but be ſure, throw the Fiſh as far as ever you can from the Fire, amongſt the Men, that they may not be obliged to come too near it; and in this manner go on, till either they have enough, or your Fiſh are gone; and when you have done, come to the Grotto for your Reward.

I then ſet abundance of Hands to work to carry Wood, to be laid in ſix Heaps, two hundred Paces from each other, and told them how to pile it. I then prepared ſix long taper Sticks with forked Ends, and ordered more Hands to divide the Fiſh equally to the Piles. I ſent others with Salt, and Bread; and I ordered them to let me know when all was ready.

While theſe Preparations were making, my Tent Viſitors had all dined, and my Cart had returned with the Beaſt-Fiſh, which the Company deſired might be brought in; when every one paſſed his Judgment upon it, and a long Diſſertation we had, on the marvelous Works of *Collwarr*. I let them go on with their Show, tho'

tho' I could have diſproved moſt of their Concluſions, from the little Knowlege I had of things; but I never was Knight-Errant enough to oppoſe my Sentiments to a Multitude already prepoſſeſſed on the other Side of the Queſtion; for this reaſon, becauſe I have ever obſerved, that where ſeveral have imbibed the ſame ridiculous Principle in Infancy, they never want Arguments, tho' ever ſo ridiculous, to ſupport it: And, as no one of them can deſert it without impeaching the Judgment of the reſt, they encourage each other in their Obſtinacy, and quite out-vote a ſingle Perſon; and then, the Laugh beginning on the ſtrongeſt Side, nothing is ſo difficult as to get it out of their Hands; but when a ſingle Man in the wrong hears a juſt Argument from a ſingle Antagoniſt, which he can't contradict, he imbibes its Force; and whilſt that laſts, as nothing but a better Argument, with better Reaſons, can remove it, he from thenceforth adopts his Adverſary's Reaſons for his own, to oppoſe againſt his own former Opinion.

In the Height of our Diſputations on the Beaſt-Fiſh, came News that the Broil was going to begin; and, as I expected very good Diverſion at it, I invited the Company to go ſee it, telling them, in my Opinion, it would exceed the Sport in taking them. We paſſed thro' the Wood till we came amongſt the Shrubs, where I placed them

them to be out of Harm's-way; and the Fire, which was now nothing but Cinders, was of no Inconvenience to them. They were pleaſed with it to perfection; for firſt, the ſix Men who walked round the Fires, by the glowing Light of the Embers and the ſhining of their Graundees, looked like Men on fire; then, to ſee each Fire ſurrounded with a Circle of Men, at the Diameter of near two hundred Paces, as cloſe as they could well ſtand, by a more diſtant Shine of the Fire, had a very pleaſant Effect: But, when the Broilers began to throw the Fiſh about, for each Man ſtood with ſome Salt and a Cut of Bread in his Hand, to ſee a Body of an hundred Men running for it, and whilſt they were ſtooping and ſcrambling for that, to ſee a hot Fiſh fall on the Back of one, which was whipped off by another, who ſcalding his Mouth with it, threw it in the Face of a third, when a fourth, fifth, and ſixth pulling it in Pieces ran away with it; and to ſee the different Poſtures, Courſes, and Groups during this Exerciſe and Running-feaſt, was the moſt agreeable Farce my Gueſts had ever ſeen in their Lives; and, to the great Saving of my Liquors, kept us in the Wood for full three Hours, not a Soul ſtirring till the Feaſt was over.

We ſpent beſt Part of this Evening in Diſcourſe on the Paſſages of the Day; the Reflections on which not being concluded till Bed-time, my Adventures

Adventures were poſtponed till the next Night; but we had firſt concluded upon a Shooting for the next Morning; for they were all extreamly deſirous of knowing how I did it, at a time they ſhould have Opportunity of ſeeing me, and making Remarks; and I, being unwilling they ſhould think me a Conjurer, agreed to make them Maſters of Part of the Myſtery of Powder and Ball.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

A Shooting propoſed; all afraid of the Gun but one private Guard; his Behaviour; Pendlehamby *at* Peter's *Requeſt makes him a General;* Peter's *Diſcourſe thereon; Remainder of his Story; the* Colambs *return.*

THIS being the fifth Morning, I cleaned up my beſt Gun, and prepared my Balls, and we all took a Walk towards the Bridge, every one admiring my Gun, as we went; but I could get none of them to carry it, and we had, at leaſt, five hundred Queſtions propoſed about it. I told them they need not be afraid of it, for it was only Wood, and Iron; but they knew nothing of Iron. I then ſhewed them how I made it give Fire, by ſnapping the Cock; they thought it was very ſtrange. I then put a little Powder in the Pan, and made it Flaſh, and ſhewing them the empty Pan, they would not be perſuaded but I had taken away the Powder, before the Flaſh, or elſe, they ſaid, it was impoſſible that ſhould be all gone, upon flaſhing only; for they ſaid it was a little Nut, uſing the ſame Word to expreſs both Nut and Seed. I then deſired one of them to put in ſome Powder, and ſnap it himſelf; but having prevailed with him to try the Experiment, if I had not thro' Caution held my Hand upon the

the Barrel, the Gun had been on the Ground; for the Moment it flaſhed, he let go, and ran for it.

I had a great Inclination to gain the better of their Prejudices, and uſed abundance of Arguments to prove the Gun as innocent a thing as a Twig I took up; and that it was the Powder, which when ſet on fire, the Flame thereof wanting more Room, than the Powder itſelf did, forced itſelf, and all that oppoſed it, out of the Mouth of the Gun, with ſuch Fury as to make the Noiſe they heard; and being juſt come to the Rock, now, ſays I, you ſhall ſee that what I tell you is true. They told me, they deſired nothing more than that I would make them underſtand it, for it was the ſtrangeſt thing they had ever ſeen. Well then, ſays I, obſerve; I put in thus much Powder only, and with this Rag I ſtop it down cloſe. Now, ſays I, you ſee by the Length of this Stick, that the Rag and Powder take up the Space only of a Finger's Depth on the Inſide of the Gun. They ſaw that plainly, they ſaid; but how could that kill any thing? Now look again, ſays I, I put in a little more Powder, as I did before when I made a Flaſh, and you ſee there is a little Hole from this Powder thro' the Side of the Gun to the Powder within. Do you obſerve that this communicates with that, thro' this Hole? Yes, they ſaid, they did. Now, ſays I, when I put fire to this, it ſets fire to that within,

within; which Fire, turning to Flame, and wanting Room, burſts out at the Mouth of the Gun: And to ſhew you with what Force it comes out, here handle this round Ball, giving them a Bullet to handle; you feel how heavy it is; now can any of you throw this Ball as far as that Rock? for I ſtood a good hundred Paces from it. They told me, no. And don't you think, ſays I, that if the Force of the Fire made by this Powder can throw this Ball to that Rock, that Force muſt be very great? They ſaid, they thought it muſt; but believed it to be impoſſible. But, ſays I, if it not only throws it to the Rock, but beats out a Piece of the Stone, muſt not that be much more violent? They agreed it muſt. Then putting in the Ball, now, ſays I, we will try. I then ordered one to daub a Part of the Rock, about Breaſt high, with ſome Mud, and firſt to obſerve about it, if the Rock was any where freſh broken, or not; who, returning, reported that the Rock was all of a Colour, and ſound, but ſomewhat ragged all about the Mud. Did you lay the Mud on ſmooth, ſays I? He replied, yes. Then lifting up my Gun, I perceived they were creeping off; ſo, I took it down again, and calling, reaſoned with them upon their Fears. What Miſchief, ſays I, can you apprehend from this Gun in my Hand? Should I be able to hurt you with it, are you not all my Friends, or Relations; could I be willing to do it? If the Gun of itſelf could

could hurt, would I handle it as I do? For ſhame, be more courageous, rouſe your Reaſon, and ſtand by me; I ſhall take care not to hurt you; it looks as if you miſtruſted my Love to you; for this Gun can do nothing, but what I direct it to.

By ſuch like Perſuaſions, rough and ſmooth, I prevailed upon the major Part of the *Colambs* and Officers to ſtand near me to ſee me fire; and then I ſhot; but tho' my Words had engaged them to ſtand it, I had no ſooner ſnapped, but the Graundees flew all open, tho' they cloſed again immediately; and then, we fell to Queſtion and Anſwer again. I deſired them to walk to the Rock, and ſent the Perſon who put up the Mark before, to ſee, and ſhew us exactly what Alteration there was; he told us, there was a round Hole in the Mud, pointing to it, which he did not leave there, and taking away the Mud, a thick Shiver of the Rock followed it. They then all agreed, that the Ball muſt have made both the Hole in the Mud, and alſo ſplintered the Rock; and ſtood in amaze at it, not being able to comprehend it: But by all the Art I had I could not prevail with a Man of them to fire the Gun himſelf, till it had been buzzed about a good while, and at laſt came to my Ears, that a common Soldier behind ſaid he ſhould not be afraid of it, if the Gentleman would ſhow him how.

I then ordered the Fellow to me, and he told me, with a compoſed Look, that it had always been his way of thinking, that what he ſaw another do, he could do himſelf, and could not reſt till he had tried: And Sir, ſays he, if this Gun, as you call it, does not hurt you, why ſhould it hurt me? And if you can make it hit that Rock, why ſhould not I? when you have told me how you manage it. Are not you the Man that firſt helped me up with the large Fiſh Yeſterday, ſays I? He told me he was.

I was prodigiouſly pleaſed with the Fellow's Spirit, and, ſays I, my Friend, if you will, and I live, you ſhall hit it before you have done. I then ſhewed him the Sight of the Gun, and how to hold it; and being perfect in that, now, ſays I, ſhut your left Eye, and obſerve with your Right, till this Knob, and that Notch, are exactly even with each other, and the Middle of that Mark; and when they are ſo, pull this Bit with your Fore-finger, holding the Gun tight to your Shoulder. He ſo exactly purſued my Directions, that he hit the very Middle of the Mud; and then, without any Emotion, walked up with the Gun in his Hand, as I had done before; and turning to me, very gravely, Sir, ſays he, it is hit. I told him, the beſt Markſman on Earth could not be ſure of coming ſo near his Mark. He ſtroaked his Chin, and giving me the Gun again, was walking to his Place; but I ſtopped

him, and ſeeing ſomething ſo modeſt and ſincere in his Countenance and Behaviour, and ſo generous in his Spirit, I aſked him to which *Colamb* he belonged. He told me to *Colamb Pendlehamby*. To my Father? ſays I, then ſure I ſhall not be denied.

I took him with me to my Father, who was not yet come up to the Rock. Sir, ſays I, there is a Favour I would beg of you. Son, ſays he, what is it you can aſk, that I can refuſe you? Says I, Sir, this Man belongs to your Guards; now there is ſomething ſo noble and daring in his Spirit, and yet ſo meek and deſerving in his Deportment, that if you will load me with Obligation, it is to make him an Officer: He is not deſerving of ſo ill a Station as a private Man.

My Father looking at me, Son, ſays he, there is ſomething to be done before he can be qualified for what you require. This, thinks I, is a put-off. Pray Sir, ſays I, what can a Man of Courage, Senſe, and a cool Temper want, to qualify him for what I aſk? Something, ſays he, which none but myſelf can give; and that, at your deſire, I will ſupply him with. Then, my Father calling him, Laſk *Naſgig* bonyoe, ſays he, that is, Slave *Naſgig* lie down. *Naſgig*, for that was his Name, immediately fell on his Face, with his Arms, and Hands, ſtrait by his Sides; when my Father, ſetting his left Foot on *Naſgig*'s Neck, pronounced theſe Words: Laſk,

I give thee Life, thou art a Filgay. Then *Naſgig* raiſing himſelf on his Knees, made Obeiſance to my Father, and ſtanding up ſtroaked his Chin; and my Father taking him by the Hand, in token of Equality, the Ceremony ceaſed.

Now Son, ſays my Father, let me hear your Requeſt? It is only, Sir, ſaid I, Preferment for the deſerving, equal to his Merit. My Father aſked him if he underſtood the Duty of a Gorpel, [a ſort of Enſign.] He did not reply yes, but beginning, gave a compendious ſort of Hiſtory of his whole Duty; at which, all the *Colambs* were very much ſurpris'd; for even his Comrades were not apprized, or ever imagined he knew more of Military Affairs than themſelves. My Father then aſked him, if he knew how to behave as a Cluff [Captain]; but he made as little Difficulty of that as the other, going thro' the ſeveral Parts of Duty in all the different Branches, in Peace and War, at Home and Abroad. Son, ſays my Father, it is a Myſtery to me, you ſhould have found out more in an Hour, than I myſelf could in half an Age; for this Man was born in my Palang [Town], of my own Laſk, and has been mine, and my Father's, theſe forty Years. I ſhall be glad if you will look on the reſt of my Laſks, and give me your Opinion; I may have more as deſerving. I told him, ſuch as *Naſgig* were not to be met with very often; and when they

they were found, ought to be cheriſhed accordingly.

Sir, ſays I, Nature works upon the ſame ſort of Materials divers ways; on ſome in ſport, and ſome in earneſt; and if the neceſſary Qualifications of a great Man are impreſſed on our Maſs, 'tis odds but we improve regularly into one, tho' it may never be publickly known, or even to ourſelves, till a proper Occaſion: For as a curious Genius will be moſt inquiſitive after, and is moſt an end retentive of Knowledge; ſo no Man is leſs oſtentatious of it. He covets Knowledge, not from the Proſpect of Gain, but meerly for its own ſake; the very knowing, being his Recompence: And if I may preſume to give you a Hint, how properly to beſtow your Favours, let it be on Perſons like this; for the vain knowing Man, who is always ſhewing it, as he for the moſt part labours for it, to ſhew out with, and procure his Riſe by it, were it not for the Hopes of that, would not think Knowledge worth attaining; and as his Riſe is his Aim, if he could invent any more expeditious Method than that, he would not pretermit any ill Act, that might advance him according to his Luſt of riſing. But the Man who aims at Perfection, from his natural Inclination, muſt, to attain his End, avoid all ill Courſes, as Impediments to that Perfection he luſts after: And that, by *Naſgig*'s Worth being ſo little known, I'll anſwer for

it, is his Character. And this being true, yourſelf will deduce the Conſequence, which is the fitter Man to bear place; for with me it is a Maxim, He that labours after Truth for Truth's ſake, and that he ſurely muſt who propoſes no worldly View in it, can't arrive at his Ends by falſe Methods; but is always the trueſt Friend to himſelf and others, the truſtieſt Subject to his Lord, and the moſt faithful Servant to his God.

My Father then turning to me, Son, ſays he, you have enlightened me more than ever I was before, and have put me on a new way of thinking; for which I am to return you many Thanks. And the whole Company doing the ſame, ſays my Father, I loſt a brave General-Officer lately, who was deſtined to the Weſtern Wars, which are breaking out; and have been long debating in my Mind, to whom I ſhould commit his Corps; and, but for the Hazard of the Enterprize, I would have now given it to *Naſgig*; but ſhall be loth to loſe him ſo ſoon, after I am acquainted with his Worth; ſo will think of ſome other Poſt nearer my Perſon for him, leſs dangerous, tho' perhaps, not ſo honourable.

Great Sir, ſays *Naſgig*, I am too ſenſible of the Honour already done me, to think any Poſt wherein I may continue to ſerve you either too mean, or too hazardous for me: And as Valour

is

is no where ſo conſpicuous, as in the greateſt Dangers, I ſhall eſteem my Blood ſpent to great Advantage in any Enterprize where my Duty under your Command leads me: I therefore the rather humbly requeſt this dangerous Poſt, that I may either loſe my Life in your Service, or live to ſee you juſtified in your Advancement of me, by the whole Nation. For what can I do, or how can I demonſtrate my Affection to your Perſon and Pleaſure, in an inactive State?

Here the whole Level rang with Applauſe to *Naſgig*.

My Father then giving his Hand to *Naſgig*, in token of Friendſhip, and his Word for Inveſtiture in the Command of that vacant Poſt, the whole Level again reſounded with Long live *Pendlehamby*, and his Servant *Naſgig*.

This being the laſt Day of my Company's ſtay, for they had agreed to go homewards next Morning, ſome of them moved to return the ſooner, that they might have time to hear out my Story. So that our ſtay was very little longer.

In our return home *Naſgig* ſingled me out, to return his Acknowledgements for my Favour, and viewing my Gun, told me, they had no ſuch thing growing in his Country. I told him, if he had it would do no good, without my Powder. I then at his Requeſt deſcribed what I had heard of our Method of Fighting in Battle in

Europe; and mentioning our Cannon, he ſaid, he ſuppoſed they killed every Man they hit. No, ſays I, not ſo bad as that; ſometimes they hit the Fleſh only, and that is commonly cured; ſometimes break a Leg, or Arm, and that may in time be cured, ſome ſo well, as to be uſeful again, and others are cut off, and healed up again; but if the Ball hits the Head, or Vitals, it is commonly mortal. O, ſays he, give me the Head or Vitals then, no broken Limbs for me.

After Dinner, at their Requeſt, I went on with my Story, at repairing the Caſtle, and my Eſcape with *Glaulepze*, and ſo on to the Crocodile; when I repeated his Speech to me on that Account, and told them, it had made ſuch an Impreſſion upon me, that I had endeavoured to make it the leading Thought of my Mind, and had ſet it down upon one of my Doors at the Grotto, that it might the oftner be in my Sight, when any Difficulty aroſe.

One of the *Colambs* begged Pardon for interrupting, but told me, tho' he underſtood what *Glaulepze* meant, he could not tell how I could ſet what he ſaid down at my Grotto, or have it in my Sight; and deſired me to explain that. I would have told my Gueſt I took it down in Writing, if that would not have puzzled the Cauſe more; but, to go the neareſt way I could, I told him, we had a Method in my Country, of conveying to a Man at a great Diſtance whatever

ever we have a mind to ſay to him; and in ſuch a manner, that no Body but himſelf would know, what we would have him know. And pauſing here a little, to conſider the eaſieſt Method of demonſtrating this to their Senſes, they told me, they had gone as far as their Conjectures could carry them, but could conclude on nothing ſo probable as ſending it by a Meſſenger. I told them, that in part was my way; but my Meſſenger ſhould not know the Meſſage he carried. That gravelled them quite, and they were unanimous, that was what could not be done. By this time I had ſent for a Wood-coal, to write with upon my Deal-table; and kneeling down to the Table, I began to write, "Honoured "Sir, I ſend this to gain by your Anſwer to it "an Account of your Arrival at *Arndruum-* "*ſtake.*" I then called them all to me: Now, ſays I, ſuppoſe I want to know how my Father gets back to *Arndruumſtake*, my way is this, I ſet down ſo many Words as will expreſs my Meaning to my Father, after the manner you ſee on this Table, and make a little Diſtance between each Word, which is the ſame thing as you do in ſpeaking; for there, if you run one Word into another, and don't give each its proper Sound, who can underſtand you? For tho' you ſpeak what contains all the Words, yet, without the proper Sound and Diſtinction, it is only Confuſion. Do you underſtand that? They

told me they did. Then, ſays I, theſe are the Words I would have my Father know, I being at this Arkoe, and he at *Arndruumſtake*. *Honoured Sir*, and ſo I read on; here, ſays I, you muſt take us to be Countrymen, and that he and I underſtand both the ſame Method. Now look, this Word, which ends where you ſee the Gap, ſtands for *honoured*, and this next for *Sir*, the next for *I*, and ſo on; and we both uſing the ſame Method, and ſeeing each others Words, are able to open our Minds at a Diſtance. —I was now in Hopes I had done, and was going on with my Story; but, ſays one of the *Colambs*, Mr. *Peter*, tho' this is a Matter that requires Conſideration, I plainly ſee how you do it, by agreeing that all theſe Strokes, put into this Form, ſhall ſtand for the Word *honoured*, and ſo on, as you ſay, let who will make them; but have not you ſet down there the Word *Arndruumſtake?* Yes, ſays I; why then, ſays he, none of your Countrymen could underſtand what that means. No? ſays I, ſmiling, but they could. Says he, you ſay, you agree what Strokes ſhall ſtand for one Word, and what for another; but then, how could your Countryman, who never knew what Strokes you would ſet down for *Arndruumſtake*, know that your Strokes meant that very Country? For that you could not have agreed upon, before either of you knew there was any ſuch Place.

I was at a loſs, without ſpending more Words than I was willing about it, how to anſwer this cloſe Reaſoner; and talking of Syllables, and Letters, would only have perplexed the Affair more; ſo I told him the readieſt for diſpatch, that as every Word conſiſted of one or more diſtinct Sounds, and as ſome of the ſame Sounds happened in different Words, we did not agree ſo much upon making our Strokes ſtand for ſeveral Words, as for ſeveral Sounds; and thoſe Sounds, more or leſs of them, added together, made the particular Words. As for Example, ſays I, *Arn* is one Sound, *druum* is another Sound, and *ſtake* is another; now, by our knowing how to ſet down theſe ſeveral Sounds by themſelves, we can couple them, and apply them to the making up any Word, in the manner we pleaſe; and therefore he, by ſeeing thoſe three Sounds together, knows I mean *Arndruumſtake*, and can ſpeak it as well, tho' he never heard the whole Word ſpoken together, as if he heard me ſpeak to him. I have ſome little Notion of what you mean, ſays he, but not clear enough to expreſs myſelf upon it; and ſo, go on, go on, and pray what did you do about the Reeds?

I then reſuming my Diſcourſe where I left off, compleated my Narration that Night; but I could perceive the Water in my Father's Eyes, when I came to the Account of *Youwarkee*'s Fall, and the Condition I took her up in.

When

When I had done, they adjuſted the Order of their Flight, for avoiding Confuſion, one to go ſo long before another, and the junior *Colambs* to go firſt.

In the Morning nothing was to be heard but the Gripſacks; the Men were all ranged in Order to go off with their reſpective *Colambs*; and after all Compliments paſſed, the junior *Colamb* ariſing, walked half-way the Wood, where his Gripſack ſtanding to wait for him, preceded him to the Level, the next Gripſack ſtanding ready to ſound as ſoon as the firſt removed; and this was the Signal for the ſecond *Colamb* to move; ſo that each *Colamb* was a Quarter of a Mile before the other.

My Father was the laſt but two; but I ſhall never forget his Tenderneſs, at parting with his Daughter and Grandchildren, and I may ſay with myſelf too; for by this time he had a high Opinion of me. *Patty* went with my Father, ſhe ſo much reſembling my Wife, that my Father ſaid, he ſhould ſtill have his two Daughters in his Sight, having her with him.

At parting, I preſented *Naſgig* with a broad Sword, and ſhewing him the Uſe of it, with many Expreſſions of Gratitude on his Part, and Reſpect on mine, he took flight after the reſt.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Peter *finds his Stores low; ſends* Youwarkee *to the Ship; receives an Invitation to* Georigetti's *Court.*

FOR the firſt few Days after our Company had left us, *Youwarkee* could not forbear a Tear now and then for the Loſs of her Father and Siſter; but I endeavoured not to ſee it, leſt I ſhould, by perſuading her to the contrary, ſeem to oppoſe what I really thought was a further Token of the Sweetneſs of her Diſpoſition; but it wore off by degrees, and having a clear Stage again, it coſt us ſeveral Days to ſettle ourſelves, and put our confuſed Affairs in Order; and when we had done, we bleſſed ourſelves that we could come and go, and converſe with the pleaſing Tenderneſs we had hitherto always done.

She told me, nothing in the World but her Concern for ſo tender a Father, and the Fear of diſpleaſing me if ſhe diſobliged him, ſhould have kept her ſo long from me; for her Life had never been ſo ſweet and ſerene as with me and her Children; and if ſhe was to begin it again, and chuſe her Settlement and Company, it ſhould be with me in that Arkoe. I told her, tho' I was intirely of her Opinion for avoiding a Life of Hurry, yet I loved a little Company, if for nothing

nothing elſe but to advance Topicks for Diſcourſe, to the Exerciſe of our Faculties; but I then agreed, it was not from meer Judgment I ſpoke, but from Fancy. But *Youwee*, ſays I, it will be proper for us to ſee what our Friends have left us, that we don't want before the time comes about again: Then ſhe took her part, and I mine; and having finiſhed, we found they would hold out pretty well, and that the firſt thing to be done, was to get the Oil of the Beaſt-Fiſh.

When we came to examine the Brandy and Wine, I found they had ſuffered greatly; ſo I told *Youwarkee*, when ſhe could ſpare time, ſhe ſhould make another Flight to the Ship; and, ſays I, pray look at all the ſmall Caſks of Wine or Brandy, or be they what they will, if they are not above half full, or thereabouts, they will ſwim, and you may ſend them down. I deſired her to ſend a Fire-ſhovel, and Tongs, deſcribing them to her; and there are abundance of good Ropes between Decks, rolled up, ſend them, ſays I, and any thing elſe you think we ſhall want, as Plates, Bowls, and all the Cutlaſſes and Piſtols, ſays I, that hang in the Room by the Cabin: For I would, methinks, have another Cargoe, as it may poſſibly be the laſt; for the Ship can't hold for ever.

Youwarkee, who loved a Jaunt to the Ship mightily, ſat very attentive to what I ſaid, and told

told me, if I pleas'd, ſhe would go the next Day; to which I agreed.

She ſtayed on this Trip till I began to be uneaſy for her, being gone almoſt four Days, and I was in great Fear of ſome Accident; but ſhe arrived ſafe, telling me, ſhe had ſent all ſhe could any ways pack up; and any one who had ſeen the Arrival of her Fleet would have taken it for a good Ship's Cargoe, for it coſt me full three Weeks to land and draw them up to the Grotto; and then we had ſuch a Redundancy of things, that we were forced to pile them upon each other, to the Top of the Room.

It began to draw towards long Days again, when one Morning in Bed I heard the Gripſack. I waked *Youwarkee*, and told her of it; and we both got up, and were going to the Level, when we met ſix Glumms in the Wood, with a Gripſack before them, coming to the Grotto. The Trumpeter, it ſeems, had been there before; but the others, who ſeemed to be of a better Rank, had not. We ſaluted them, and they us; and *Youwarkee* knowing one of them, we deſired them to walk to the Grotto.

They told us, they came Expreſs from *Georigetti*'s Palace, with an Invitation to me and *Youwarkee* to ſpend ſome time at his Court. I let them know, what a Misfortune I lay under in not being born with the Graundee, ſince Providence

Providence had pleaſed to diſpoſe of me in a Part of the World where alone it could have been of ſuch infinite Service to me; or I ſhould have taken it for the higheſt Honour, to have laid myſelf at their Maſter's Feet: And after ſome other Diſcourſe, one of them preſſed me to return his Maſter my Anſwer; for they had but a very little time to ſtay. I told them, they ſaw plainly, by bareing my Breaſt to them, that I was under an abſolute Incapacity for ſuch a Journey, and gratifying the higheſt Ambition I could have in the World; for I was pinned down to my Arkoe, never more to paſs the Barrier of that Rock. One of them then aſking, if I ſhould chuſe to go, if it was poſſible to convey me thither; I told him, he could ſcarce have the leaſt Doubt, was my Ability to perform ſuch a Journey equal to my Inclination to take it, that I ſhould in the leaſt heſitate at obeying his Maſter. Sir, ſays he, you make me very happy, in the Regard you ſhew my Maſter; and I muſt beg Leave to ſtay another Day with you. I told him, they did me great Honour; but little thought what it all tended to.

We were very facetious; and they talked of the number of Viſitors I had here; and they mentioned ſeveral Facts which had happened, and amongſt the reſt that of *Naſgig*, who they ſaid, ſince his Return, had been introduced by

Pendlehamby

Pendlehamby to the King, and was for his great Prudence and Penetration become *Georigetti*'s great Favourite. They told me, War was upon the Point of breaking out, and ſeveral other Pieces of News, which, as they did not concern me, I was very eaſy about.

The next Morning they deſiring to walk, and view what was moſt remarkable in my Arkoe, and above all to ſee me fire my Gun, which they had heard ſo much of; I gratified them at a Mark, and hit the Edge of it, and found them quite ſtaunch, without the leaſt Start at the Report. I paid them a Compliment upon it, and told them how their Countrymen had behaved, even at a ſecond firing: But, ſays he who was the chief Spokeſman, and knew I found as much as I could tell him, that ſecond Fright was from ſeeing Death the Conſequence of the firſt; and tho' you had then to do moſtly with Soldiers, you muſt not think they chuſe Death more than others, tho' their Duty obliges them to ſhun it leſs.

The ſame Perſon then deſired me to ſhew him how to fire the Gun; which I did, and believe he might hit the Rock ſome where or other; but he did not ſeem to admire the Sport, and I having but few Balls left, did not recommend the Gun to the reſt.

A little before Bed-time, the Strangers told me, they believed I ſhould ſee *Naſgig* next Morning.

Morning. I preſently thought there was ſomewhat more than ordinary in this Viſit; but could no ways dive to the Bottom of it.

Juſt before they went to Reſt, they ordered the Trumpeter to be early on the Rock next Morning; and, upon the firſt Sight of *Naſgig*'s Corps, to ſound Notice of it, for us to be ready to receive him.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Naſgig *comes with a Guard to fetch* Peter; *long Debate about his going*; Naſgig's *Uneaſineſs at* Peter's *Refuſal*; *relates a Prediction to him, and Proceedings thereon at* Georigetti's *Court*; Peter *conſents to go*; *prepares a Machine for that Purpoſe.*

WE were waked by the Trumpet, giving Notice of *Naſgig*'s coming; I did not care to enquire of the Stranger into the Particulars of his Embaſſy; for be it what it will, thinks I, *Naſgig* is ſo much my Friend, that I can know the Motives of it from him, and, or I am much deceived, he is too honeſt to impoſe upon me: But I had but little time for Thought, for upon our entring the Level, we found him and his Train, of at leaſt an hundred Perſons, juſt alighting before us.

We embraced, and profeſſed the particular Pleaſure Fortune had done us, in once more meeting together. When we arrived at the Grotto, he told me, he was aſſured I had been informed of the Occaſion of his Viſit; and that it would be the greateſt Honour done to his Country, that could be imagined. He then laid his Hand on my Beard, which was now of about five Months Growth, having never ſhaved it ſince my

my Father went, and told me, he was glad to ſee that. And are you not ſo to ſee me, ſays I? Yes ſurely, ſays he, for I prize that for your ſake. But, ſays I, pray be open with me and tell me, what you mean by my being informed of the Occaſion of your coming? Why, ſays he, of *Georigetti*'s Meſſage to you; as it will be of ſuch infinite Service to our Country: And, ſays he, if you had not conſented to it, the Meſſengers had returned and ſtopped me. True, ſays I, one of the Meſſengers told me the King would be glad to ſee me; which as I, ſo well as he, knew it was impoſſible he ſhould; in return to his Compliment, I believe I might ſay, what a Happineſs it would be to me if I could wait on him. But pray what is your immediate Meſſage, for I hear you are in great Favour at Court, and would never have come hither with this Retinue in ſo much Ceremony, on a trifling Account.

My dear *Peter*, ſays *Naſgig*, know that your Fame has reached far and near ſince I ſaw you before; and our State tho' a large and populous one, and once of mighty Power and twice its preſent Extent, by the Revolt of the weſtern Part of it who choſe themſelves a King, has been ſo miſerably harraſſed by Wars, that the Revolters, who are ever fomenting Diſcontent and Rebellion amongſt us, will, by the Encroachments they daily make on us, certainly reduce us at laſt to a Province under their Government; which will render

us all Slaves to an uſurped Power, ſet up againſt our lawful Sovereign. Now, theſe things were foretold long enough before they actually began to be tranſacted; but all being then at Peace, and no Proſpect of what has ſince happened, we looked not out for a Remedy, till the Diſeaſe became ſtubborn and incurable. Pray, ſays I, by whom were the things you mention foretold? By a very ancient and grave Ragam, ſays he. How long ago, ſays I? O, above four times the Age of the oldeſt Man living, ſays he. And when did he ſay it would happen, ſays I? That, ſays he, was not quite ſo clear then. But how do you know, ſays I, that he ever ſaid any ſuch thing? Why the thing itſelf was ſo peculiar, ſays he, and the Ragam delivered it ſo poſitively, that his Succeſſors have ever ſince pronounced it twelve times a Year publickly Word for Word, to put the People in mind of it, and from whom they muſt hope for Relief; and now the long expected time being come, we have no hopes but in your Deſtruction of the Tyrant-Uſurper. I deſtroy him, ſays I! if he is not deſtroyed till I do it, I fear your State is but in a bad Caſe. My good Friend *Peter*, ſays he, you or no body can do it. Pugh, ſays I, *Naſgig*, I took you for a Man of more Senſe, notwithſtanding the Prejudices of Education, than to think, becauſe you have ſeen me kill a Beaſt-Fiſh, that could not come to hurt me, at the Diſtance of twenty Paces; that I can

kill

kill your Uſurper, at the Diſtance he is from me. No, my good Friend, ſays *Naſgig*, I know you take me to have more Judgment than to think ſo. Why, what elſe can I do, ſays I? unleſs he will come hither to be killed by me. Dear *Peter*, ſays he, you will not hear me out. I will, ſays I, ſay on. You, as I ſaid before, being the only Perſon that can, according to our Prediction, deſtroy this Uſurper, and reſtore Peace among us; my Maſter *Georigetti*, and the whole State of *Norrunbdſgrſutt*, were going to ſend a ſplendid Embaſſy to you; but your Father adviſing to repoſe the Commiſſion wholly in me, they all conſented to it, and I am come to invite you over to *Brandleguarp* for that Purpoſe. I know you will tell me you have not the Graundee, and can't get thither: But I am aſſured you have what is far better; the Wiſdom you have will help you to ſurmount that Difficulty, which our whole Moucherat can't get over. And I am ſure did you apply half the Thought to accompliſh it, you ſeem to do to invent Excuſes againſt it, you would eaſily overcome that. And now, dear Friend, continues he, refuſe me not; for as my firſt Riſe was owing to your Favour, ſo my Downfal as abſolutely attends your Refuſal.

Dear *Naſgig*, ſays I, you know I love you, and could refuſe you nothing in my Power; but for me to be mounted in the Air, I know not how, over theſe Rocks, and then drowned by a

Fall

Fall into the Sea, which is a neceſſary Conſequence of ſuch a mad Attempt; and all this, in Proſecution of a Project founded upon an old Wife's Tale, is ſuch a Chimera, as all Men of Senſe would laugh at; as if there was no way of deſtroying me, but with a Guard of an hundred Men, to ſouſe me into the wide Ocean. A very pretty Conqueror of Rebels I ſhould prove truly, kicking for Life, till the next Wave ſent me to the Bottom.

Naſgig looked then ſo grave, I almoſt thought I ſhould have heard no more of it; but after a ſhort Pauſe, *Peter*, ſays he, I am ſorry you make ſo light of ſacred things; a thing foretold ſo long ago by a holy Ragam, kept up by undoubted Tradition ever ſince in the manner I have told you, in part performed, and now waiting your Concurrence for its Accompliſhment; but if I can't prevail with you, tho' I periſh at my Return, I dread to think you may be forced without Thanks to perform, what generouſly to undertake will be your greateſt Glory.

Pray, ſays I, *Naſgig*, for now I perceive you are in earneſt, what may this famous Prediction be?

Ah, *Peter*, ſays *Naſgig*, to what Purpoſe ſhould I relate ſo ſacred a Prediction to one who, tho' the moſt concerned in it, makes ſuch a Jeſt of it?

His

His mentioning me as concerned in it, raiſed my Curioſity once more to deſire a Relation of it. Why ſhould I relate it, ſays he, if you are reſolved not to fulfil it? I told him, I had no Reſolution againſt any thing that related to my own good, or that of my Friends; but the greateſt Queſtion with me, ſays I, is, whether I am at all concerned in it. O, clearly, clearly, ſays he, there is no doubt of it, it muſt mean you or no body. I told him I muſt judge by the Words of it, that I was the Perſon intended by it; and till that was apparent to my Reaſon, it would be difficult to procure my Conſent to ſo perilous an Undertaking. And, ſays he, will you upon hearing it judge impartially, and go with me if you can take the Application to yourſelf? I can't go quite ſo far as that, ſays I, but this I'll promiſe you, I'll judge impartially, and if I can ſo apply it to myſelf, that it muſt neceſſarily mean me and no other, and if you can convince me I may go ſafely, I will go.

Naſgig was ſo rejoiced at this, he was at a loſs how to expreſs himſelf. My dear *Peter*, ſays he, you have given me new Life; our State is free, our Perſons free, we're free, we're free; and *Peter*, ſays he, now I have given Vent to my Joy, you ſhall hear the Prediction.

You muſt know, this holy Ragam lived four Ages ago; and from certain Dreams and Revelations he had had, ſet himſelf to overturn our Country-

Country-Worſhip of the great Image; and by his Sanctity of Life and ſound Reaſonings, had almoſt effected it under the Aſſiſtance of *Begſurbeck* then our King, who had fully embraced his Tenets; but the reſt of the Ragams oppoſing him, and finding he could not advance his Scheme, he withdrew from the Ragams, to a cloſe Retirement for ſeveral Years; and juſt before his Death, ſending for the King and all the Ragams, he told them, he ſhould certainly die that Day; and that he could not die at Peace, till he had informed them what had been revealed to him; deſiring them to take Notice of it, not as a Conjecture of his own, but a certain Verity which ſhould hereafter come to paſs. Says he, "You know you "have rejected the Alteration in your Religion I "propoſed to you; and which *Begſurbeck*, here "preſent, would have advanced; and now I muſt "tell you, what you have brought upon yourſelves. "As for *Begſurbeck*, he ſhall reign the longeſt "and moſt proſperouſly, of all your former and "future Kings; but in twice his time out-run, "the Weſt ſhall be divided from the Eaſt, and "bring Sorrow, Confuſion, and Slaughter, till "the Waters of the Earth ſhall produce a "Glumm, with Hair round his Head, ſwimming "and flying without the Graundee; who, with "unknown Fire and Smoak, ſhall deſtroy the "Traitor of the Weſt, ſettle the ancient Limits "of the Monarchy, by common Conſent eſta-

" bliſh what I would have taught you, change " the Name of this Country, introduce new " Laws and Arts, add Kingdoms to this State, " and force Tributes from the Bowels of the " Earth, of ſuch things as this Kingdom ſhall " not know till then, and ſhall never afterwards " want; and then ſhall return to the Waters " again. Take care, ſays he, you miſs not the " Opportunity when it may be had; for once " loſt, it ſhall never, never more return; and " then, wo, wo, wo, to my poor Country." The Ragam having ſaid this, expired.

This Prediction made ſo great an Impreſſion on *Begſurbeck*, that he ordered all the Ragams ſingly before him, and heard them repeat it; which having done, and made himſelf perfect in it, he ordered it to be pronounced twelve times in the Year, on particular Days, in the Moucherat, that the People might learn it by heart; that they and their Children being perfect in it, might not fail of applying it, when the Man from the Waters ſhould appear with proper Deſcription.

Thus *Peter*, ſays he, has this Prediction been kept up in our Memories as perfectly, as if it had but juſt been pronounced to us.

Tis very true, ſays I, here may have been a Prediction, and it may have been as you ſay, handed down very exactly from *Begſurbeck*'s Days till now; but, how does that affect me? how am I concerned in it? Surely, if any Marks would

would have denoted me to be the Man; ſome of the *Colambs*, who have ſo lately left me, and were ſo long with me, would have found them out in my Perſon, or among the ſeveral Actions of my Life I recounted to them.

Upon the Return of the *Colambs* from you, ſays *Naſgig*, they told his Majeſty what they had heard and ſeen at *Grandevolet*; and the Story was conveyed thro' the whole Realm; but every Man has not the Faculty of Diſtinction: Now, one of the Ragams when he had heard of you, applying you to the Prediction, and that to you, ſoon found our Deliverer in you; and, at a public Moucheratt, after firſt pronouncing the Prediction, declared himſelf thereon to the following Effect:

" May it pleaſe your Majeſty, and you the " honourable *Colambs*, the reverend Ragams, " and People of this State, ſays he; you all " know, that our famous King *Begſurbeck*, who " reigned at the time of this Prediction, did live " ſixty Years after it in the greateſt Splendor, " and died at the Age of one hundred and twenty " Years, having reigned full ninety of them; " and herein you will all agree with me, that " no King before, or ſince, has done the like. " You all likewiſe know, that within two hun- " dred Years after *Begſurbeck*'s Death, that is, " about twice his Reign of ninety Years out- " run, the Rebellion in the Weſt began, which

" has been carried on ever ſince; and our " Strength diminiſhing, as theirs increaſes, we " are now no fair Match for them; but are " fearful of being undone. So far, you will " agree Matters have tallied with the Prediction; " and now, to look forward to the time to come, " it becomes us to lay hold of the preſent Oppor- " tunity for our Relief; for that, once ſlipp'd, " will never return; and, if I have any Skill in " Interpretations, now is the time of our Deli- " verance.

" Our Prediction foretells the paſt Evils, their " Increaſe and Continuance, till the Waters of " the Earth ſhall produce a Glumm: Here I " muſt appeal to the honourable *Colambs* preſent, " if the Waters have not done ſo, in the Perſon " of Glumm *Peter* of *Grandevolet*; as they " have received it from his own Report."

All the *Colambs* then riſing, and making Reverence to the King, declared it was moſt true.

" The next part ſays the Ragam, is, he is to " be hairy round his Head; and how his Perſon " in this reſpect agrees with the Prediction, I " beg leave to be informed by the *Colambs*."

The *Colambs* then riſing, declared, that having ſeen and converſed with him, they could not obſerve any Hair on the Fore-Part of his Head; But I anſwered, that when I left you, I well remembered your having ſhort Stubbs of Hair upon your Cheeks, and Chin; which I had no ſooner mentioned,

mentioned, than your Father aroſe and told the Aſſembly, that tho' he did not mind it whilſt he was with you; yet he remembered, that his Daughter a Year before had told him, that you had Hair on your Face before, as long as that behind.

This again putting new Life into the Ragam, he proceeded. "Then let this, ſays he, be put "to the Trial, by an Embaſſy to Glumm *Peter*; "and if it anſwers, there will be no Room to "doubt the reſt. Then, ſays the Ragam, it is "plain by the Report of the *Colambs*, that "Glumm *Peter* has not the Graundee.

"As to the next Point, he is to ſwim and fly. "Now I am informed he ſwims daily, in a thing "he calls a Boat." To which, the *Colambs* all agreed. "And now, ſays he, that he flies too, "that muſt be fulfilled; for every Word muſt "have a Meaning, and that indeed he muſt do, "if ever he comes hither. I therefore adviſe, "that a Contrivance be ſome how found out, "for conveying Glumm *Peter* thro' the Air to "us; and then, we ſhall anſwer that Part of the "Prediction; and I think, and don't doubt, but "that may be done.

"Now, ſays he, let us ſee the Benefit pre-"dicted to us, upon the Arrival of Glumm "*Peter*. Our Words are; who, with un-"known Fire and Smoak, ſhall deſtroy the "Traitor of the Weſt. What can be plainer

" than this? For I again appeal to the *Colambs*, " for his making unknown Fire and Smoak.

" Thus far, ſays the Ragam, we have ſuc- " ceeded happily towards a Diſcovery of the " Perſon; but it ends not here, with the Death " of the Traitor; but ſuch other Benefits are " to accrue, as are mentioned in the following " Part of the Prediction; they are Bleſſings yet " to come; and who knows the End of them?

" I hope, ſays the Ragam, I have given Satif- " faction in what I have ſaid, and ſhall now " leave it to the Care of thoſe, whoſe Buſineſs it " is to provide, that none of thoſe Woes pro- " nounced againſt us may happen; by miſſing " the time, which when gone, will never re- " turn."

The Aſſembly were coming to a Reſolution of ſending you a pompous Embaſſy; but your Father prevailed, for ſending me only: For, ſays he, my Son thinks better of him, than of the reſt of our whole Race. So this important Affair was committed to me, with Orders to prepare a Conveyance for you; which I cannot attempt to do, but ſhall refer myſelf to your more ſolid Judgment, in the Contrivance of it.

I had ſat very attentive to *Naſgig*, and from what he had declared, could not ſay, but there was a very great Reſemblance between myſelf and the Perſon predicted of; but then, ſays I, they are Idolaters, Providence would not interpoſe in

in this Affair, when all the Glory of its Succeſs muſt redound to an Idol. But, ſays I, has not the ſame thing often happened from oracular Preſages, where the Glory muſt redound to the falſe Deity? But what if, as is predicted, their Religion is to be changed to the old Ragam's Plan, and that will be to the Aboliſhion of Idolatry? I know not what to ſay, but if I thought my going would gain a ſingle Soul to the eternal Truth, I ſhould not ſcruple to hazard my Life in the Attempt.

I then called in *Youwarkee*, told her the whole Affair of the Prediction, which ſhe had often heard, I found, and could have repeated. I told her, that the King and States had pitched on me, as the Perſon intended by their Prediction; and that *Naſgig* was ſent to fetch me over; and indeed, ſays I, *Youwee*, if this be a true Prediction, it ſeems very applicable to me as far as I can ſee. Yes truly, ſays ſhe, ſo it does, now I conſider it in the Light you ſay the Ragam puts it. Why, ſays I, Prophecies and Predictions are never delivered ſo plain as to mention Names; but yet, upon the Solution, they become as intelligible as if they did; the Circumſtances tallying ſo exactly. But what would you have me do? ſhall I, or ſhall I not go? Go! ſays ſhe, how can you go? O, ſays I, never fear that. If this is from above, Means will ſoon be found; Providence never directs Effects without Means.

Youwarkee, whoſe Head ran only on the Dangers of the Undertaking, had a violent Conflict with herſelf; the Love of me, of her Children, and of her Country, divided her ſo, ſhe was not capable of adviſing. I preſſed her Opinion again, when ſhe told me to follow the Dictates of my own Reaſon, and, but for the Dread of loſing you, and for my Childrens ſakes, ſays ſhe, I ſhould have no Choice to make when my Country is at Stake; but you know beſt.

I told *Youwarkee*, that I really found the Prediction the plainer the more I thought of it; and that above all, the Change of Religion was the uppermoſt: For, if I can reduce a State from the Miſery and Bondage of Idolatry, to a true Senſe of the Supreme Being, and ſeemingly by his own Direction; ſhall I fear to riſque my own Life for it, or will he ſuffer me to periſh, till ſomewhat, at leaſt, is done towards it? And how do I know but the whole Tendency of my Life has been by Impulſe hither, for this very Purpoſe? My dear *Youwee*, ſays I, fear nothing, I will go.

I called *Naſgig* and told him my Reſolution, and that he had nothing now to do but prepare a Means of conveying me. He ſaid, he begged to refer that to me, for my own Thoughts would ſuggeſt to me both the ſafeſt and eaſieſt Means.

I wanted to venture on the Back of ſome ſtrong Glumm, when *Naſgig* told me, no one could

could endure my Weight ſo long a Flight. But what charmed me moſt was, the lovely *Youwarkee* offered to carry me herſelf if ſhe could; and if I can't hold out, ſays ſhe, my Dear, we can but at laſt drop both together. I kiſs'd the charming Creature with Tears in my Eyes, but declined the Experiment.

I told *Naſgig* I wanted to divide my Weight between two or four Glumms, which, I believed I could eaſily do; and aſked if each could hold out with a fourth Part of my Weight. He told me there was no doubt of that; but he was afraid I ſhould drop between their Graundees, he imagining I intended to lie along on their Backs, Part of me on each of them, or ſhould bear ſo much on them as to prevent their Flight. I told him, I did not purpoſe to diſpoſe of myſelf in the manner he preſumed; but, if two or four could undoubtedly bear my Weight ſo long a Flight; I would order myſelf without any other Inconvenience to my Bearers than their Burthen. He made light of my Weight between four, as a Trifle; and ſaid, he would be one with all his Heart. Nay, ſays I, if four cannot hold out, can eight? He plainly told me, as he knew not what I meant he could ſay nothing to it; nor could imagine how I could divide ſo ſmall a Body as mine, into eight different Weights; for it ſeemed impoſſible he ſaid to him; but if I would ſhew him my Method, he would then give me his Opinion.

I then leaving him, took out my Tools; I pitched upon a ſtrong broad Board my Wife had ſent me from the Ship, about twelve Feet long, and a Foot and half broad: Upon the Middle of which, I nailed down one of my Chairs. Then I took one Cord of about thirty-four Feet long, making Hand-loops at each End, and nailed it down in the Middle to the under Side of my Board, as near as I could to the fore End of it; and I took another Cord of the ſame Length and Make, and this, I nailed within three Feet of the further End of my Board. I then took a Cord of about twenty Feet long, and nailed about three Feet behind the foremoſt, and a fourth of the ſame Length, at the further End of my Board; by which Means, the firſt and third Ropes being the longeſt, and at ſuch a Diſtance from the ſhort Ropes, the Glumms who held them, would fly ſo much higher and forwarder than the ſhort Rope ones, that they and their Ropes would be quite out of the others way; which would not have happened, if either the Ropes had been all of one Length, or nearer to, or farther from one another: And then conſidering that if I ſhould receive a ſudden Jerk or Twitch, I might poſſibly be ſhook off my Chair, I took a ſmaller Rope to tie myſelf with faſt to the Chair; and then I was ſure if I fell into the Sea, I ſhould at leaſt have the Board and Chair

with

with me, which might poſſibly buoy me up, till the Glumms could deſcend to my Aſſiſtance.

Having carried the Machine down to the Level with the Help of two of *Naſgig*'s Men, he being out on a Walk, and having never ſeen it; I ordered one of the Men to ſit upon the Chair, and eight more to hold by the Loops, and riſe with him; but, as I found it difficult at their firſt riſing, not being able to mount all equally, to carry the Board up even, and the back part riſing firſt, the Front pitched againſt the Ground and threw the Fellow out of the Chair. I therefore bad them ſtop, and ordering eight others to me; ſaid I, hold each of you one of theſe Ropes as high as you can over your Heads; then, ſays I, to the eight Bearers, mount on your Graundees, and come round behind him in the Chair gently, two and two, and take each of you a Loop, and hover with it till you are all ready, and then riſe together; keeping your Eye on the Board that it riſes neither higher at one End, or one Side, than the other; and ſee you all feel your Weight alike, then fly croſs the Lake and back again. They did ſo, and with as much eaſe they told me, as if they had nothing in their Hands; and the Man rode with ſo much State and Compoſure, he ſaid, that I longed to try it myſelf: So ſhifting Places with the Glumm, I mounted the Chair, and tying myſelf round, I aſked if any one knew which way *Naſgig* walked.

One

One of them pointing to where he ſaw him juſt before in the Wood; I ordered them to take me up as before, and go that way.

Upon coming to the Place where I expected *Naſgig* was, I hallow'd and called him, who, knowing my Voice, ran to the Skirt of the Wood; and ſeeing me mounted in my flying Chair, I jokingly told him I was going, if he had any Commands; but he mounting immediately came up to me, and viewing me round, and ſeeing the Pleaſure the Men ſeemed to carry me with; ſays he, are you all ſure you can carry him ſafe to *Battingdrigg*? They all replied, yes, with eaſe. This then, ſays he, is your Doom; If you perform it not, every one ſhall be ſlit; but, if you carry the Deliverer ſafe, you are Filgays every Man of you, he verily thinking I was then going off; but I undeceived him, by ordering them to turn about, and ſet me down where I was taken up.

Naſgig alighting, and viewing my Contrivance; This, *Peter*, ſays he, is but a very plain thing. It is ſo, ſays I, but it is as far as my Ingenuity could reach. Ah! *Peter*, ſays he, ſay not ſo, for if the greateſt Difficulties, as I and all my Nation thought it would be to convey you to them, are ſo plain and eaſy to you, what muſt leſſer things be? No, *Peter*, I did not call it plain, becauſe it might be eaſily done when it was ſeen; but in reſpect to the Head that formed it;

it; for the neareſt way to attain one's End is always the beſt, and attended for the moſt part with feweſt Inconveniencies; and I verily think, *Peter*, tho' we believe the Riſe or Fall of our State wholly depends on you, you muſt have ſtayed at *Grandevolet*, but for your own Ingenuity. Well, and when ſhall we ſet out, ſays he? I told him it would take up ſome time to ſettle the Affairs of my Family, and to conſider what I had beſt take with me; and required at leaſt three Days, being as little as I could have I told him for that Purpoſe.

Naſgig, who, as he was an honeſt Man, and for making the beſt for his Patrons, was ſorry it was ſo long, tho' he imagining at the ſame time it was ſhort enough for one who was to go on ſuch an Enterprize, was glad it was no longer; and immediately diſpatched a Trumpet Expreſs with Notice, that on the fourth Day he ſhould beat the Height of *Battingārigg*; and that having myſelf formed a Machine for that Purpoſe, I would accompany him.

I began next to conſider what part I had to act at *Doorpt Swangeanti*, for I neither could, or would call it by any other Name, when I came thither; and what it was they expected from me. I am, ſays I, to kill a Traitor; good, that may be, but then I muſt take a Gun and Ammunition; and why not ſome Piſtols and Cutlaſſes? If I can't uſe them all, I can teach

others

others who may; I'll take ſeveral of them, and all my Guns but two, and I'll leave a Pair of Piſtols; I may return and want them. I'll take my two beſt Suits of Cloaths and other things ſuitable; for, if I am to perform things according to this Prediction, it may be a long time before I get back again. Thinks I, *Youwarkee* ſhall ſtay here with the Children; and if I like my Settlement, I can ſend for her at any time. I then began to ſee the Neceſſity of making at leaſt one more Machine to carry my Goods on; and, ſays I, as they will be very weighty, I muſt have more Laſks to ſhift in carrying them; for I will retain ſixteen for my own Body-machine, in order to relieve each other; and as the Diſtance is ſo great, I will not be ſtinted for want of freſh Hands.

Being come to this Reſolution I called *Naſgig*, and ordered eight freſh Laſks to attend my Baggage: Theſe, he ſoon ſingled out; ſo having ſettled all Matters with my Wife, and taken Leave of her and the Children, I charged them not to ſtir out of the Grotto till I was gone; and leaving them all in Tears, I ſet out with a heavy Heart for the Level; where the whole Convoy and my two Machines waited for me.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Peter's *Speech to the Soldiery*; *offers them Freedom*; *his Journey*; *is met by the King*; *the King ſent back, and why*; Peter *alights in the King's Garden*; *his Audience*; *Deſcription of his Supper and Bed.*

WHEN we came to the Level, I deſired *Naſgig* to draw all his Men into a Circle as near as they could ſtand; I then aſked them who would undertake to carry me? When not a Man but proffered his Service, and deſired to have the Poſt of Honour as they called it. I told them my Queſtion was only in Caſe of Neceſſity, to know whom I might depend upon; for my Bearers were already provided, ſaving Accidents. But, my Friends, ſays I, as you are equally deſerving for the offered Service, as if you were accepted, are any of you deſirous of becoming Filgays? They all anſwering together, I, I, I. *Naſgig*, ſays I, you and I muſt come to a Capitulation before I go, and your Honour muſt be pledged for Performance of Articles.

I began with telling them what an Enemy I was to Slavery; and, ſays I, to *Naſgig*, as I am about to undertake what no Man upon Earth ever did before; to quit my Country, my Family, my every other Conveniency of Life, for I know not

not what, I know not where; and from whence I ſhall never return: I muſt be indulged, if I am ever ſo fortunate as to arrive ſafe in your Country, in the Satisfaction of ſeeing all theſe my Fellow-Travellers as happy as myſelf; for which reaſon, I muſt inſiſt upon every Man preſent alighting with me in Safety, being made free the Moment we touch the Ground: And unleſs you will engage your Honour for this, I will not ſtir a Step further.

Naſgig paused for an Anſwer; for tho' my Bearers were his own Laſks, and he could diſpoſe of them at pleaſure, yet, as the reſt were the Kings, he knew not how far he might venture to promiſe for them; but being deſirous to get me over the Rock, fearing I might ſtill retract my Purpoſe, he engaged to procure their Freedom of the King: And this, I thought, would make the Men more zealous in my Service.

I then permitting them to take me up, we were over the Rock as quick as Thought, and when I had a little experienced the Flight, I perceived I had nothing to fear; for they were ſo dextrous on the Graundee, that I received not the leaſt Shock all the way, or ſcarce a wry Poſition, tho' every Quarter of an Inch at hand made a conſiderable Deflection from the Perpendicular. We ſhifted but twice till we came to *Battingdrigg*; the manner of which I directed as I ſat in my Chair: For I ordered the new Man

Man to hover over him he was to relieve, and reaching down his Hand to meet the others which was held up with the Rope, the old Bearer ſunk beneath the Chair, and the Reliever took his Courſe. This we did one by one, till all were changed; but there was one, a ſtout young Fellow, at the firſt ſhort Rope on my Right-hand, who obſerving me to eye him more than the reſt, in a Bravadoe would not be relieved before we arrived at *Battingdrigg* Arkoe; and I afterwards took him into my Family.

As it was now ſomewhat advanced into the light Seaſon, I had hopes of a tolerable good Proſpect; but had it been quite light, I ſhould have been never the better for it. I had been upon very high Mountains in the inland Parts of *Africa*; but was never too high to ſee what was below me before, tho' very much contracted; but here, in the higheſt of our Flight, you could not diſtinguiſh the Globe of the Earth but by a ſort of Miſt, for every way looked alike to me; then ſometimes on a Cue given, from an inexpreſſible Height my Bearers would dart as it were ſloping like a ſhooting Star, for an incredible Diſtance almoſt to the very Surface of the Sea, ſtill keeping me as upright as a Spaniard on my Seat. I aſked them the Reaſon of their ſo vaſt Deſcent, when I perceived the Labour they had afterwards to attain the ſame Height again. They told me, they not only eaſed their Graundees by

that

that Deſcent, but could fly half as far again in a Day, as by direct, they meant horizontal, Flight; for tho' it ſeemed laborious to mount ſo exceſſive high, yet they went on at the ſame time at a great Rate; but when they came to deſcend again, there was no Compariſon in their Speed. And on my Conſcience, I believe they ſpoke true, for in their Deſcents, I think, no Arrow could have reached us.

In about ſixteen Hours, for I took my Watch with me, we alighted on the Height of *Batting-drigg*; when I thought I had returned to my own Arkoe it was ſo like it, but much larger. Here, we reſted four Hours; I opened my Cheſt, and gave each of my Bearers a Drop of Brandy, *Naſgig* and I alſo juſt wetted our Mouths, and eat a Piece of Preſerve to moiſten us; the reſt of the Laſks ſitting down, and feeding upon what they had brought with them in their Colapets; for their Method is, when they take long Flights, to carry a Number of hard round Fruits, flat like my Cream-cheeſes, but much leſs, which containing a ſort of Flower they eat dry; then drinking, that ſwells, and fills them as much as a good Meal of any thing elſe would. Here, we met with abundance of delightful Pools of Water on the vaſt Flat of the Rocks. They told me, in that Arkoe the young Glumms and Gawreys came in vaſt Flights ſeperately, to divert themſelves on the fine Lake of Waters, and from thence,

thence, went ſometimes as far as my Arkoe for that Purpoſe; but that was but ſeldom.

When we had ſufficiently reſted, they ſhut their Colapets, which ſometimes hung down from their Necks, and were ſometimes ſwung round to their Backs, and croſſing the Arkoe and another large Sea, but nothing comparable to the firſt, we arrived in about ſix Hours more, to the Height of the white Mountains, which *Naſgig* told me were the Confines of *Georigetti*'s Territories; but, thinks I, it may belong to whom it will for the Value of it; for nothing could be more barren than all the Top of it was; but the Inſide of it made amends for that, by the prodigious tall and large Trees it abounded with, full of the ſtrangeſt Kinds of Fruits I had ever ſeen: And theſe Trees, moſt of them ſeemed to grow out of the very Stone itſelf, not a Peck of Dirt being to be collected near them. Without-ſide of theſe Mountains, it was ſcarce darker than at my Arkoe; for I made all the Obſervation my time would allow me; when ſpying at a vaſt Diſtance ſeveral Lights, which were unuſual things to me in that Country; they told me, the largeſt was the Burning-mountain *Alkoe*, this I remembered to have heard the Name of upon ſome former Occaſion, tho' I could not recollect what; and that the reſt were of the ſame ſort, but ſmaller. I aſked if they were in *Georigetti*'s Territories? They ſaid no, they belonged to another King

King formerly, whoſe Subjects were as fond of Fire, as *Georigetti*'s were of avoiding it; and that many of them worked with it always before them, and made an inſufferable Noiſe by it.

At hearing the above Relation, an Impreſſion ſtruck my Fancy, that they might be a ſort of Smiths or Workers in Iron, or other Metals; and I wiſhed myſelf with them, for I had a mighty Notion of that Work, having been frequently at a neighbouring Forge when a Boy, and knew all their Tools, and reſolved to get all the Information I could of that Country ſome other time; for our Company drawing to their Poſts, and preparing to ſet forward again, I could have no more Talk now; and you muſt know, I had obſerved ſo many idle Raſcals before I left *England*, who could neither ſtrike a Stroke, or ſtir a Foot, whilſt you talked with them; that I feared if I aſked Queſtions by the way, they ſhould in anſwering me neglect their Duty, and let me drop.

When we came near our Journey's End, *Naſgig* aſked me where I would pleaſe to alight. I told him, I thought at my Father's; for tho' I came on a Viſit to the King, it would not ſhew Reſpect to go before him juſt off a Journey. But, I might have ſpared me the Trouble of ſettling that Point; for we were not gone far from the Black-mountain, it going by that Name within ſide, tho' it is called the White without, before we

we heard the Gripſacks, and a ſort of ſqueaking or ſcreaming Muſick very loud. *Naſgig* told me the King was in flight. I aſked him, how he knew that, for I could ſee no body. He knew it, he ſaid, by the Gripſack and the other Muſick; which never played but on that Occaſion; and preſently after, I thought the whole Kingdom were on the Graundee, and was going to order my Bearers back to the Mountain, for fear of the Concourſe. Thinks I, they will joſtle me down out of Civility, and I ſhall break my Neck to gratify their Curioſity. So, I told *Naſgig*, if he did not ſomehow ſtop the Multitude, I would turn back for the Mountain, for I would never venture into that Croud of People.

Naſgig ſprung away to the King, and informed him; but the King fearing the People ſhould be diſguſted at his ſending them back, gave Orders for the whole Body to file off to the Right and Left, and taking a vaſt Sweep each way, to fall in behind me; but upon no Account to come near me, for fear of Miſchief. This was no ſooner ſaid than done, and all ſpreading into two vaſt Semicircles, met in a Train juſt behind my Chair.

Naſgig had alſo perſuaded the King to retreat back to the Palace, telling him, it was not with me as with them, who could help themſelves in caſe of Accident; but, as I was under the Guidance of others, and on a Foundation he ſhould ſcarce,

ſcarce, in my Condition, have ventured upon, he was ſure, I ſhould be better ſatisfied with his intended Reſpect only, than to receive it there: But, ſays he, that your Majeſty may ſee his Contrivance, I will cauſe him to alight in the Palace-Garden, where you may have the Pleaſure of viewing him in his Machine.

The King returning, ordered all the *Colambs*, who waited my Arrival, to aſſemble in Council again; and as I went over the City, I was ſurprized to ſee all the Rock of which it conſiſted quite covered with People, beſides prodigious Numbers in the Air, all ſhouting out Peels of Welcome to me; and as we were then but little above their Heads, every one had ſomething to ſay of me; one wondring what I had got on, another ſwearing he ſaw Hair on my Face as long as his Arm; and in general, every one calling upon the Image for my Safety.

The King was preſent when I alighted in the Garden; and himſelf taking me from my Chair, I bent on one Knee to kiſs his Hand, but he took me in his Arms, called me his Father, and told me, he hoped I would make his Days equal in Glory to his great Anceſtor *Begſurbeck*. We complimented ſometime, before he took me into a ſmall Refectory in the Garden, and gave me ſome of his Sort of Wine; which I found was loaded with Ramſhorn, and ſome dried and moiſt Sweetmeats. He then told me, I had a Piece of Ceremony

Ceremony to go thro', after which, he hoped to have me to himſelf. I told him, whatever Forms of State were cuſtomary, they become neceſſary, and I ſhould obey him.

His Majeſty then called one of the Perſons in waiting, and telling him he was going to the Room of Audience, ordered him to conduct me thither forthwith.

Following my Guide, after a long Walk thro' a ſort of Piazza, we entred under a ſtately Arch curiouſly carved, into a very ſpacious Room, lighted with infinite Numbers of Globe-lamps; where he deſired me to ſit down on a round Stone Pedeſtal covered with Leaves, and all round the Sides of it were running Foliages exquiſitely wrought; on the Walls were carved Figures of Glumms in ſeveral Actions, but chiefly in Battle, or other warlike Exerciſes, in *alto-relievo*, very bold; with other Devices interſperſed. I ſat down, having firſt paid my Submiſſion to the Throne, and to the ſeveral *Colambs* who ſat on the King's Right and Left, down the Sides of the Room.

The Perſon then who introduced me, going into the Middle of the Room, ſpoke to this Effect: "Mighty King, and you honourable "Lords his *Colambs*, here is preſent the Glumm "*Peter* of *Grandevolet*; I wait your Commands, "where to diſpoſe him."

Then

Then the King, and all the *Colambs* ariſing, another Perſon ſtepped forth, and looking at me, for I was ſtanding; Glumm *Peter* of *Grandevolet*, ſays he, I am to ſignify to you, that the mighty King *Georigetti*, and all his honourable *Colambs*, congratulate your Arrival in *Norrunbdſgrſutt*, and have commanded me to give you Rank according to your Merit. Then the King and *Colambs* ſat down, and I was led to the King's Right-hand, and placed on the ſame Stone with, but at ſome ſmall Diſtance from, his Majeſty.

The King then told me the great Pleaſure I had done him and the *Colambs*, in my ſo ſpeedy Arrival upon their Meſſage; but ſaid, he would give me no further Trouble now, than to know how I choſe to be ſerved; and deſired me to give Orders to a Baſh, he would ſend to me, for whatever I wanted; and then giving Orders to a Baſh to ſhew me my Lodgings, I was permitted to retire to refreſh myſelf.

I was then conducted to my Appartment, up a ſloping Flight of Stone, very long, with a vaſt Arch over my Head; I believe it might be fifty Paces long at leaſt, but being a very broad eaſy Aſſent, and ſmooth, it was not in the leaſt fatiguing. All the way I went, were the ſame ſort of Globe-lights as in the Audience-Room. The Stair-caſe, if I may call it ſo, it anſwering the ſame Purpoſe, was moſt beautifully carved, both Sides and Top; at length I came into a very

very large Gallery, at leaſt fourſcore Paces long, and about twenty broad; on each Side of which, hung the ſame Globes. At the further End of this Gallery I entered by an Arch, very narrow, but moſt neatly wrought into an oval Room; in the Middle of this Room, on the right Hand, was another ſmall neat Arch-way; entring thro' which about ten Paces, there were two ſmaller Arches to the Right and Left, and within them, with an eaſy Aſcent of about three Paces, you came to a flat Trough of Stone, ſix or ſeven Feet long, and about the ſame width; theſe, I underſtood by my Baſh, were the Beds to lie on. I aſked him, if they were uſed to lie on the bare Stone. He told me, ſome did; but he had Orders to lay me on Doſſee [Softs]; and preſently up came four Fellows with great Mats, as I took them for by my Globe-light, full of ſomething, which by their ſo eaſily carrying ſo great Bulk, I perceived was very light. They pitched it down upon my Stone-bedſtead, and firſt with great Sticks, and then with ſmall Switches having beat it ſoundly, retired.

Whilſt I was looking about at the Oddity of the Place, I found my Baſh was gone too. So, ſays I, all gone? I ſuppoſe they intend I ſhall now go to Bed. I then went into my Bed-chamber, for there were Globe-lights there too, and obſerving my Bed lay full four Feet above the Stone, and ſloping higher to the Sides and

Head, I went to feel what it was; but laying my Hand upon it, it was ſo ſoft, I could feel no Reſiſtance till I had preſſed it ſome way; and it lay ſo light, that a Fly muſt have ſunk upon it. Well, thinks I, what if I never lay thus before, I believe I have lain as bad.

I then took a Turn into my oval Room again, and obſerved the Floor, Sides, and all was Stone, as ſmooth as poſſible, but not poliſhed; and the Walls, and Ceiling, and in ſhort every Place, where they could be ornamental, were well adorned with Carvings, as can be conceived.

Tho' no body came near me yet, I did not care to be too inquiſitive all at once, but I longed to know what they burnt in the Globes, which gave ſo ſteady a Light, and yet ſeemed to be incloſed quite round, Top and Sides, without any Vent-hole for the Smoak to evaporate. Surely, thinks I, they are a dulliſh Glaſs, for they hung almoſt above my Touch, and muſt be exceeding hot with the Fire ſo incloſed, and have ſome ſmall Vent-hole, tho' I can't ſee it. Then ſtanding on tip-toe to feel, it ſtruck quite cold to my Finger; but I could only reach to touch that, or any of the reſt, being all of one Height.

Whilſt I was muſing thus, I heard the Sound of Voices coming along the Gallery; and preſently came a Train of Servants, with as much Victuals as an hundred Men could eat, and Wines proportionable; they ſet it down at the upper End

of

of the oval Room, on a Flat of Stone, which on making the Room had been left in the upper Bend of the Oval quite croſs it, about Table high, for that Purpoſe. Theſe Eatables, ſuch as were liquid, or had Sauces to them, were ſerved up in a ſort of grey Stone-bowls; but the dry were brought in neat wooden Baſkets of Twig-work.

The Servants all retiring into the Gallery, except my Baſh, I aſked him, if any Body was to eat with me; he told me no. I wonder, ſays I, they ſhould ſend me ſo much then. He replied, it was the Allowance of my Appartment, by his Majeſty's Orders; which ſilenced me.

I believe there were twenty different things on the Table, inſomuch, that I did not know where to begin, and heartily wiſhed for an Excuſe to get rid of my Baſh, who ſtood cloſe at my Elbow, that I might have ſmelt, and taſted, before I helped myſelf to any thing; for I knew not what any one thing was.

In this Perplexity, I aſked my Baſh, what Poſt he was in under his Majeſty? He ſaid, one of the fifty Baſhes, appointed to be near the King's Favourites when at Court. And pray, ſaid I, are you the Perſon to attend me? He was, he ſaid, the Principal to wait on my Perſon; but there were at leaſt ſixty others, who had different Offices in this Appartment. I would be glad, ſaid I, to know your Name, that I may the

more readily ſpeak to you. He told me, his Name was *Quilly*. Then, pray *Quilly*, ſays I, do you know what is become of my Baggage and my Chair? I found, tho' he gueſt at my Baggage, he was puzzled at the Name of Chair; my Seat, ſays I? O, I underſtand you, ſays he. Then pray, will you go bring me word of them, and ſee them brought ſafe up into the Gallery. He tripped away on my Errand. So, thinks I, now I am fairly rid of you; but I had ſcarce turned any of my Viands over, before I found he had but ſtepped into the Gallery, to ſend ſome of the idle Fellows in waiting there; and this putting me to a Nonplus, *Quilly*, ſays I, you know I am a Stranger here; and as different Countries have different Ways and Cuſtoms, as well of dreſſing their Eatables as other things, and theſe Diſhes being dreſſed contrary to my Cuſtom; I ſhall be glad if you will name ſome of them to me, that I may know them when I ſee them again.

Quilly began with this, and run on to that, which was a fine Diſh; and the other, few but the King have at their Tables; and here, ſays he, is a Diſh of Padſi; and there——Hold, hold, ſays I, *Quilly*, let's try theſe firſt, before you proceed; for I remembered, at my Grotto they all eat my Fiſh for Padſi, and I cut a Slice of it, for I always carried my Claſp-knife in my Pocket, and they had no ſuch thing there, and laying it

on

on a round Cake I took for my Trencher, I taſted it, and found it ſo, to my Apprehenſion, in the Palate; but it did not look or flake like Fiſh, as I obſerved by the Slices they had cut it into; for all the Victuals was in long Slices ready to bite at. I aſked him, if theſe things were not all cut, and with what? for I underſtood they had no Knives, ſhewing him mine. He ſaid, the Cook cut it with a ſharp Stone. I then aſked him the Names of ſeveral other things, and at laſt he came to Crullmott; which having heard of before, I now taſted, and could have ſworn it had been a haſhed Fowl. I aſked him, if Crullmotts were very common? He told me, yes, towards the Bottoms of the Mountains there were abundance of Crullmott-Trees. No, no, ſays I, not Trees; I mean Fowls, Birds. I don't know what they are, ſaid he, but theſe Crullmotts grow on very large Trees. Indeed, I did not know yet, what I was at; but, ſays I, if your Fowls do, ſure your Fiſh don't grow on Trees too. We have none of them, ſays he, in this Country. Why, ſays I, it is but this Moment I taſted one. I don't know then, ſaid he, where the Cook got it. Why here, ſays I, what you call Padſi, I call Fiſh. Ay, Padſi, ſays he, grows upon a Buſh in the ſame Woods. Well done, ſays I, this is the firſt Country I was ever in, where the Fiſh and Fowl grew on Trees; 'tis ten to one,

but I meet with an Ox growing on ſome Tree by the Tail, before I leave you.

I had by this time, out of theſe two and ſome other Pickings, made up a very good Meal; and putting my Knife into my Pocket, deſired ſomething to drink. My Baſh aſked me, what I pleaſed to have. I told him, any thing to take a good Draught of. Then he filled me a Bot [Shell] of Wine, very well taſted, tho' too ſweet for Meals; but putting ſome Water to it, it did very well.

My Meſſengers being returned, and having ſet all my things in the Gallery; I deſired *Quilly* to let the Victuals be taken away. Upon which, there came more Servants than Diſhes, who took all at once; but ſome Wine and Water I deſired might remain.

I told *Quilly*, I ſaw there were two Beds, who are they for? ſays I. One for you, and one for me, ſays he; for we Baſhes, never leave the King's Favourites. Pray *Quilly*, ſays I, what is the Meaning that to the ſeveral Rooms I have been in there is never a Door? Door! ſays he, I don't know that. What, ſays I, don't you ſhut your Rooms at Night? No, no; ſhut at Night! I never heard of that. I believe, ſays I, *Quilly*, it is almoſt Bed-time, is it not? No, no, ſays *Quilly*, the Gripſack has not ſounded. How do you know, ſays I, in this Country, when you ſhould lie down, and when riſe? For

my

my Wife has told me, you have no Clocks. No, no Clocks, says he. Then, says I, does every one rise and lie down when they please? or do you all lie down, and all rise together about the same time? O, says *Quilly*, you will hear the Gripsack presently; there are several Glumms, who take it by Turns to sound it for Rest; and then we know it is time to lie down; and when they sound it again, we know it is time to rise: And afterwards I found these People guessed the time, being twelve Hours between Sound and Sound, so well, that there was but few Minutes Variation at any time, between them and my Watch; and I set my Watch to go from their Soundings at six o'Clock.

I found myself pretty much fatigued after my Journey; for tho' I had only to sit still, yet the excessive Velocity of such an unusual Motion strained every Muscle as much as the hardest Labour: For you may imagine, I could not at first be without my Fears upon ever so small a Variation of my Chair; which, tho' I could not possibly by my own Inclination one way or other rectify; yet a natural Propensity to a perpendicular Station, involuntarily byasses one to incline this or that way in order to preserve it: And then, at first, my Breath being ready to fail me in Proportion to the Celerity of the Flight, and to my own Apprehensions; and being upon that Exercise near thirty Hours, and without Sleep

for almoſt forty, you may judge I wanted Reſt: So I told *Quilly*, I would lie down, and ordered him not to diſturb me, till I waked of myſelf.

I could not prevent the Officiouſneſs of my Valet, to put me to Bed, and cover me with the Down, or whatever it was; for having no Sheets, I pulled off nothing but my Coat, Wig, and Shoes, and putting on my Flannel Night-cap, I laid me down.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The King's Apartments deſcribed; is introduced to the King; a Moucheratt called; his Diſcourſe with the King about Religion.

I Have known ſome Travellers ſo peculiar in their Taſte, as not to be able to ſleep in a ſtrange Lodging; but, thanks to my kind Stars, that did not prove my Caſe; for having looked on my Watch when I went to Bed, as I call it, and finding it was down, I wound it up, and obſerved it began to go at about three o'Clock, whether Day or Night matters not; and when I waked it was paſt nine, ſo that I know I had ſlept eighteen Hours; and finding that a very reaſonable Refreſhment, and myſelf very hungry, I called *Quilly* to get me my Breakfaſt.

Quilly told me his Majeſty had been to viſit me, but would not have me diſturbed. I begging him to diſpatch my Breakfaſt as ſoon as poſſible, and let me have ſome Water for my Hands, he ordered the Gallery-Waiters, and every thing came immediately.

My Breakfaſt was a brown Liquid, with a ſort of Seeds or Grain in it, very ſweet and good; but the Fear of the King's Return, before I was ready for him, prevented my inquiring into what it was: So having finiſhed it, and waſhed my Hands, *Quilly* preſented me a Towel,

which looked like an unbleached coarſe Linen, but was very ſoft and ſpongy; and I found afterwards was made of Threads of Bark, ſtripped from ſome Tree. I put on my brown Suit, Sword, and long Wig, and ſent *Quilly* to know when it was his Majeſty's Pleaſure I ſhould wait upon him.

I had been ſo much uſed to Lamp-light in my Grotto, that the Lights of this gloomy Manſion did not ſeem ſo unuſual a thing to me, as they would have done to a Stranger. The King ſent me Word he would admit me immediately, and *Quilly* was my Conductor to his Majeſty's Apartment.

We paſſed through the Gallery, at the further End of which was a very beautiful Arch, even with the Stair-caſe, through which *Quilly* led me into a large Guard-Room, wherein were above an hundred Glumms poſted in Ranks, with their Pikes in hand, ſome headed with ſharp-pointed Stone, others with multangular Stone, and others with Stone Globes. Paſſing through theſe, we entred another Gallery as long as that to my Apartment; then under another Arch we came into a ſmall ſquare Room, carved exceeding fine; on the Right and Left of which were two other Arch-ways, leading into moſt noble Rooms, but we only ſaw them, paſſing quite croſs the little Room through an Arch

that

that fronted us, into a ſmall Gallery of prodigious Height; at the further End of which *Quilly* turning aſide a Mat, introduced and left me in the moſt beautiful Place in the Univerſe; where neither ſeeing or hearing any body ſtir, I employed myſelf in examining the Magnificence of the Place, and could, as I then thought, have feaſted my Eye with Variety for a Twelve-month. I paced it over one hundred and thirty of my Paces long, and ninety-ſix broad; there were Arches in the Middle of each Side, and in the Middle of each End: The Arch-Ceiling could not be leſs than the Breadth of the Room, and covered with the moſt delightful Carvings, from whence hung Globe-lights innumerable, but ſeemingly without Order, which I thought appeared the more beautiful on that account. In the Center of the Room hung a prodigious Cluſter of the ſame Lights, ſo diſpoſed as to repreſent one vaſt Light; and there were ſeveral Rows of the ſame Lights hung round the Room, one Row above another at proper Diſtances; theſe Lights repreſented to me the Stars, with the Moon in the Middle of them; and after I came to be better acquainted with the Country, I perceived the Lights were to repreſent the ſouthern Conſtellations. The Archways were carved with the fineſt Devices imaginable, gigantick Glumms ſupporting on each ſide the Pediments. At every ten Paces, all along

along the Sides and Ends, aroſe Columns, each upon a broad ſquare Baſe, admirably carved; theſe reached to the Cornice, or Baſe of the arched Ceiling, quite round the Room. On the Pannels between each Column were carved the different Battles, and moſt remarkable Achivements of *Begſurbeck* himſelf. Over the Arch I entred at was the Statue of *Begſurbeck*, and over the oppoſite Arch the old prophetick Ragam. In the Middle of the Room ſtood a long Stone Table lengthways, moſt exquiſitely carved, almoſt the Length of the Room, except where it was divided in the Middle, about the Breadth of the Arch-ways, in order for a Paſſage from one Arch to the other. In ſhort, to deſcribe this one Room particularly, would make a Volume of itſelf.

I ſtaid here a full Hour and half, wondring why no body came to me; at length turning myſelf about, I ſaw two Glumms coming towards me, and having received their Compliments, they deſired me to walk in to the King. We paſſed through another middling Room, and taking up a Mat at the further ſide of it, I was conducted in where his Majeſty was ſitting with another Glumm. They both aroſe at my Entrance, and calling me their Father, and leading me, one by each Hand, obliged me to ſit down between them.

After

After ſome Compliments about my Journey, and Accommodation ſince, the King told me I had not waited ſo long without, but he had ſome urgent Diſpatches to make, and as he choſe to have me in private with him, he imagined, he ſaid, I would be able to divert myſelf in the Boſke [great Hall or Saloon]. I declared I had never ſeen any thing like it for Grandeur and Magnificence before; but the Beauty of the Sculpture, and Diſpoſition of the Lights, were moſt exquiſite.

All this while I felt the other Glumm handling my long Wig, and feeling whether it grew to my Head, or what it was; for he had, by this time, got his Finger under the Caul, and was pulling my Hair down: When I turning about my Head, Glumm *Peter*, ſays the King, don't be uneaſy, the Ragam will do you no hurt, it is only to ſatisfy his Curioſity; and I choſe to have the Ragam here, that we may more leiſurely adviſe with you what Courſe to take in the preſent Exigencies of my State. I have fully heard the Story of your Travels from my *Colambs*, and we have returned thanks to the great Image for bringing you, after ſo many Hazards and Deliverances, ſafe to my Dominions for our Defence.

The Ragam deſired to know whether all that Hair, meaning my Wig, grew upon my Head,

or not. I told him no, it was a Covering only, to put on occaſionally; but that Hair did grow on my Head, and pulling off my Wig, I ſhewed them. The Ragam then aſked me if I had Hair of my own growing under that too, meaning my Beard, which he then had in his Hand, for their Glumms have no Beards; but I told him that grew there of itſelf. O parly Puly! [ſweet Image] ſays the Ragam, riſing up and ſmiting his Hands together, it is he, it is he!

Pray, ſays I, Ragam, who is this Puly you ſpeak of? It is the Image, ſays he, of the great Collwarr. Who is that, ſays I? Why, he that made the World, ſays he. And pray, ſays I, what did his Image make? O, ſays he, we made the Image. And pray, ſays I, can't you break it again? Yes, ſays he, if we had a mind to be ſtruck dead we might; for that would be the immediate Conſequence of ſuch an Attempt, nay of but holding up a Finger againſt it in Contempt. Pray, ſays I, did ever any body die that way? No, ſays he, no one ever durſt preſume to do it. Then perhaps, ſaid I, upon Trial, the Puniſhment you ſpeak of might not be the Conſequence of ſuch an Attempt. Pray, ſays I, what makes Collwarr have ſo great a Kindneſs for that Image? Becauſe, ſays he, it is his very Likeneſs, and he gives him all he aſks for us; for we only aſk him. Why, ſays he, it is the Image that has brought you amongſt us.

I did not then think it a proper time to advance the contrary to the Perſon I then had to do with, as I was ſure it would have done no good; for a Prieſt is only to be convinced by the ſtrongeſt Party: So I deferred my Argument on that Head to a fitter Opportunity.

Moſt admirable *Peter*, ſays the King, you, you are the Glumm we depend upon to fullfil an ancient Prediction delivered by a venerable Ragam. If you will, Ragam I. O. ſhall repeat it to you, and therein you will be able to diſcern yourſelf, plainly deſcribed, in not only ſimilar, but the expreſs Words I myſelf, from your Story, ſhould deſcribe you in.

In good earneſt, I had from divers Circumſtances concluded, that I might be the Perſon; and reſolved, as I thought I had the beſt Handle in the World for it from the Prediction, to do what I could in the Affair of Religion, by fair Means or Stratagem, for I was ſenſible my own ſingle Force would not do it, before I began to ſhew myſelf in their Cauſe, or elſe to deſert them; and having had a ſmall Hint from *Naſgig* of what the old Ragam's Deſign was in part, and which I approved of, I purpoſed to add what elſe was neceſſary, as part of his Deſign, if his Propoſals had been approved of.

I told the King I would excuſe the Ragam the Repetition of the Prediction, as I had partly been

been informed of it by *Naſgig*; and that conceiving myſelf, as he did, to be the Perſon predicted of by the Ragam, I had the more readily ſet out on this Expedition, which nothing but the Hopes of performing ſo great a Good could have prevailed with me to undertake; and I did not doubt, with God's Bleſſing, to accompliſh it.

The King grew exceeding joyous at what I ſaid, and told me he would call a Moucheratt, at which all his *Colambs* ſhould attend to have their Advice, and then we would proceed to Action; and ordered the Ragam to let it be for the ſixth Day, and in the mean time that he and his Brethren ſhould, Day and Night, implore the Image to guide their Deliberations.

The Ragam being gone, I told the King I had ſomething to impart to him, in which it was my Duty to obtain his Majeſty's Sentiments before I appeared publickly at the Moucheratt. He deſiring me to proceed; I told him I had been ſome time conſidering the old Ragam's Prediction, with the Occaſion of it; and, ſays I, it is plain to me, that all theſe Miſchiefs have befallen you for neglect of the Ragam's Propoſal concerning Religion; as I underſtand your great Anceſtor would have come into it, and would have had his People done ſo too, but for the Ragams, who hindered it.

You find, ſays I, by your traditional Hiſtory, that *Begſurbeck* lived long, and reigned glorioufly;

ouſly; and I would aim at making you as proſperous as he was, and infinitely more happy, not only in outward Splendor here, but in great Glory hereafter.

Perceiving that my Diſcourſe had quickened the King's Attention; ſays I, I muſt let your Majeſty know it is the old Ragam's Plan I muſt proceed upon in every Branch of it. Why, ſays the King, he would have aboliſhed our Worſhip of the Image. And ſo would I, ſays I; nay, not only would, but muſt and will, before I engage myſelf in your Deliverance; and then with the only Aſſiſtance of the great Collwarr, whom I adore, and whom you muſt too, if you expect any Service from me, I don't doubt to prevail.

Your Majeſty ſees, ſays I, in few Words, I have been very plain with you, and I deſire you in as conciſe and plain a Manner to anſwer me, what are your Thoughts on this Head; for I can ſay no more till I hear them.

The King ſeeing me ſo peremptory; Glumm *Peter*, ſays he, looking about to ſee no one was near, I have too much Senſe to imagine our Image can do either good or hurt; for if it could have done us good, why would it not, in our greateſt Diſtreſs, now near two hundred Years paſt? For my own part I put no Truſt in it, nor did my famous Anceſtor the great *Begſur-*

beck;

beck; but here is my Difficulty, where to chuſe another Object of Worſhip; for I perceive by myſelf, Mankind muſt, through natural Impulſe, look to ſomewhat ſtill above them, as a Child does to his Father, from whom he hopes for, and expects Succour in his Difficulties; and tho' the Father be not able to aſſiſt him, ſtill he looks to him: And therefore, I ſay, we muſt have another before we can part with this, or the People, inſtead of the Part who have been in the Defection, will all deſert me; for they are eaſy now in hopes of Help from the Image, and every little Gleam of Succeſs is attributed to it: But for the Diſadvantages we receive, the Ragams charge them on the Peoples not praying, and paying ſufficiently; which they, poor Souls! knowing in their Conſciences to be true enough, are willing rather, as they are bid, to take the Blame upon themſelves, than to ſuffer the leaſt to fall on the Image.

All this, ſays the King, I am ſenſible of; but ſhould I tell them ſo, my Life muſt pay for it; for the Ragams would bring ſome Meſſage from the Image againſt me, to deſert or murder me; and then happy would be the firſt Man who could begin the Miſchief, which the reſt would ſoon follow.

This ſo frank and unexpected Declaration gave me great Confidence in the King; and I told him

him, if that was his Opinion, he might leave the reſt to me, I would ſo manage it that the thing ſhould be brought about by my means; and I would then ſatisfy all his Scruples, and make him a flouriſhing Prince. But I could not help reflecting with myſelf, how nearly this diſtant Prince, and his State, copied ſome of my Neighbours in *Europe*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Peter's *Reflections on what he was to perform; ſettles the Method of it; his Advice to his Son and Daughter; Globe-lights living Creatures; takes* Maleck *into his Service;* Naſgig *diſcovers to* Peter *a Plot at Court; Revolt of* Gauingrunt.

HAVING now fully entred into the Spirit of the Buſineſs with my own good Liking, I was determined to puſh it vigorouſly, or periſh in the Attempt. Have I, ſays I, ſo large a Field before me now to manifeſt my Maker in to a whole Nation, and under his own Call, and to fullfil their own Prediction too; and ſhall I ſhrink at the poſſible Danger? Or may there not rather be no probability of Danger in it? The Nation is in diſtreſs, the readier therefore to try any Remedy for help: Their Image has ſtood idle two hundred Years; there has been an old Prophecy, or at leaſt if not true, as firmly believed to be true as if it was ſo; and this in regard to the People anſwers in all reſpects as well. But why ſhould it not be true? It is better atteſted by the frequent Repetition, from the original Delivery to this time, than are many Traditions I have heard of amongſt us Chriſtians, which have come out ſpick and ſpan new from

from the Repoſitories of the Learned, of twelve, or fifteen hundred Years old, little the worſe for lying by; though they are not pretended to have ſeen Light all that time, and are undoubted Verities the Moment they receive the grand Sanction. Then, if any Means but Fraud or Force can gain ſo large a Territory to the Truth, and I am the only Perſon can introduce it, ſhall not I endeavour it? Yes, ſurely; but I am not excluded all Advantages neither, for all the Works of Providence are brought to paſs by appointed Means: And indeed was it otherwiſe, what could we call Providence? For a peremptory Fiat, and it is over, may work a Miracle it is true, but will not exhibit the Proceedings of Providence. Therefore let me conſider in a prudential way how to proceed to the Execution of what I am to ſet about; and guide me, Providence! I beſeech you, to the End.

Upon the beſt Deliberation I could take, I came to the following Reſolutions: Firſt, to inſiſt on the Abolition of the Image-Worſhip, and to introduce true Religion by the fitteſt Means I could find Opportunity for.

Secondly, as the Revolters had been one People with thoſe I would ſerve, and had this Prediction amongſt them too, and were intereſted in it, in hopes of its diſtant Accompliſhment: So if they came properly to the Knowledge, that the Perſon predicted of had appeared, and

was

was ready for Execution of his Purpoſes, it muſt ſtagger their Fidelity to their new Maſter; and therefore I would find Means to let them know it.

Thirdly, that I would not march till I was in Condition not eaſily to be repulſed; for that would break both the Hopes and Hearts of my Party, and deſtroy my religious Scheme; and therefore I would get ſome of my Cannon.

Fourthly, that I would go to the War in my flying Chair, and train up a Guard for my Perſon with Piſtols and Cutlaſſes.

Theſe Reſolutions I kept to myſelf till the Moucheratt was over, to ſee firſt how Matters would turn out there.

Whilſt I waited for the approaching Moucheratt, my Son *Tommy* and Daughter *Hallycarnie* paid their Duties to me. It is ſtrange how ſoon young Minds are tainted by bad Company. I found them both very glad to ſee me, for every body, they ſaid, told them I was to be their Deliverer. They had both got the Prophecy by heart, and mentioned the Image with all the Affection of natural Subjects. The Moment *Tommy* ſpoke of it to me; hold, ſays I, young Man, what's become of thoſe good Principles I took ſo much pains to ground you in? Has all my Concern for your Salvation been thrown away upon you? Are you become a Reprobate? What! an Apoſtate from the Faith you

inherited by Birth-right? Is the God, I have ſo often declared to you, a wooden one? Anſwer me, or never ſee my Face more.

The Child was extremely confounded to ſee me look ſo ſevere, and hear me ſpeak ſo harſh to him. Indeed Father, ſays he, I did not willingly offend, or deſign to ſhew any particular Regard to the Image; for, thanks to you, I have none; but what I ſaid was only common Diſcourſe in every Body's Mouth; I meant neither good or harm by it.

Tommy, ſays I, it is a great Fault to run into an Error, though in Company of Multitudes; and where a Perſon's Principle is found at bottom, and founded upon Reaſon, no Numbers ought to ſhake it. You are young, therefore hearken to me; and you, *Hallycarnie*, whatever you ſhall ſee done by the People of this Country, in the Worſhip of this Idol, don't you imitate it, don't you join in it. Keep the ſound Leſſons I have preached to you in mind; and upon every Attempt of the Ragams, or any other, to draw you aſide to their Worſhip, or even to ſpeak or act the leaſt thing in praiſe of this Idol, think of me, and my Words; pay your Adoration to the Supreme Father of Spirits only, and to no Wooden, Stone, or Earthen Deity whatſoever.

The

The Children wept very heartily, and both promiſed me to remember and do as I had taught them.

Being now in my oval Chamber, and alone with my Children, I had a mind to be informed of ſome things I was almoſt aſhamed to aſk *Quilly*. *Tommy*, ſays I, what ſort of Fire do they keep in theſe Globes? and what are they made of? Daddy, ſays he, yonder is the Man ſhifting them, you may go and ſee. Being very curious to ſee how he did it, I went to him; as I came near him, he ſeemed to have ſomething all Fire on his Arm. What has the Man got there, ſays I? Only Sweecoes, ſays *Tommy*. By this time I came up to him; Friend, ſays I, what are you about? Shifting the Sweecoes, Sir, ſays he, to feed them. What Oil do you feed with, ſays I? Oil! ſays he, they won't eat Oil; that would kill them all. Why, ſays I, my Lamp is fed with Oil.

Tommy could ſcarce forbear laughing himſelf; but for fear the Servant ſhould do ſo too, pulled me by the Sleeve, and deſired me to ſay no more. So turning away with him; Daddy, ſays he, it is not Oil that gives this Light, but Sweecoes, a living Creature; he has got his Baſket full, and is taking the old ones out to feed them, and putting new ones in; they ſhift them every half Day, and feed them. What, ſays I, are all thoſe infinite Number of Globes I

ſee

ſee living Creatures? No, ſays he, the Globes are only the tranſparent Shell of a Bot, like our Calibaſhes, the Light comes from the Sweecoe within. Has that Man, ſays I, got any of them? Yes, ſays he, you may ſee them; the King, and the *Colambs*, and indeed every Man of Note has a Place to breed and feed them in. Pray let us go ſee them, ſays I, for that is a Curioſity indeed.

Tommy deſired the Man to ſhew me the Sweecoes; ſo he ſet down his Baſket, which was a very beautiful Reſemblance of a common Higler's Baſket, with a Handle in the Middle, and a Diviſion under it, with Flaps on each ſide to lift up and down. It was made of Straw-coloured ſmall Twigs, neatly compacted, but ſo light as ſcarce to be of any Weight. Opening one of the Lids, I could make very little Diſtinction of Subſtances, the Bottom ſeeming all over of a quite white Colour. I looking ſurprized at the Light, the Man took out one, and would have put it into my Hand; but perceiving me ſhy of it, he aſſured me it was one of the moſt innocent things in the World: I then took it, and ſurveying it, it felt to my Touch as ſmooth and cold as a Piece of Ice. It was about as long as a large Lobworm, but much thicker. The Man ſeeing me admire the Brightneſs of its Colour, told me that had done its Duty, and was going to be fed; but thoſe which were going upon

Duty were much clearer; and then opening the other Lid, thoſe appeared far exceeding the others in Brightneſs, and Thickneſs too. I aſked what he fed them with? He ſaid Leaves and Fruit; but Graſs, when he could get it, which was not often, they were very fond of.

Having diſmiſſed my Children, I ſent for *Naſgig* to gain ſome Intelligences I wanted to be informed of. The Moment I ſaw him it came into my Mind to inquire after my new Filgays. He ſaid the King granted my Requeſt at the firſt Word. I told him then he had ſaved his Honour with me, and I was obliged to him; but, ſays I, you told me my Bearers ſhould be free too. They are ſo, ſays he. Then there is one thing I want, ſays I, and that is to ſee the ſecond Bearer on my right Hand, who came through without ſhifting. I have a fancy for that Fellow, ſays I, to be about my Perſon: I like him, and if you can give him a good Word, I ſhould be glad to treat with him about it.

My Friend *Peter*, ſays he, you are a Man of Penetration, though it ill becomes me to ſay ſo in regard of Perſons; but I can ſay that for him, if he likes you as well as you ſeem to like him, he is the truſtieſt Fellow in the World; but as he knows his own Worth, he would not be ſo to every Body, I can tell you that. I don't fear his diſliking me, ſays I, for I make it my Maxim to do as I would be done by; and

if

if he is a Man of Honour, as you ſeem to ſay, he will do the ſame, and we ſhall be ſoon agreed. But, ſays *Naſgig*, it being now the fourth Day ſince he was freed, he may be gone home perhaps; for he is not of our Country, but of Mount *Alkoe*. If *Quilly* can find him he'll come; ſo he ordered *Quilly* to ſend for *Maleck* of Mount *Alkoe*, with Orders to come to me.

We deſcended from one Diſcourſe to another, and at length to King *Georigetti*'s Affairs; when *Naſgig* giving a Sigh, Ah, *Peter*, ſays he, we ſhall loiter away our time here till the Enemy are upon our Backs. There is Venom in the Graſs; I wiſh my good Maſter is not betrayed. By whom? ſays I. By thoſe he little ſuſpects, ſays he. Why, ſays I, they tell me you are much in his Favour, if ſo why do you ſuffer it? I believe, ſays *Naſgig* I am in his Favour, and may continue in it, if I will join in Meaſures to ruin him, but elſe I ſhall ſoon be out of it. You tell me Riddles, ſays I. Theſe things, ſays he, a Man talks, with his Head in his Teeth. There is Danger in them, *Peter*; there is Danger. You don't ſuſpect me, ſays I, do you? No, ſays he, I know your Soul too well; but there are three Perſons in theſe Dominions who will never let my Maſter reſt till out of his Throne, or in Hoximo. I am but lately in Favour, but have made as many

Obſervations perhaps as thoſe who have been longer about the King.

Naſgig, ſays I, your Concern proceeds from an honeſt Heart; don't ſtifle what you have to ſay; if I can counſel you with Safety I'll do it, if not I'll tell you ſo.

Peter, ſays he, *Georigetti* was the only Son of a well-beloved Father, and aſcended his Throne ten Years ago on his Deceaſe; but *Harlokin*, the Prince of the Revolters, whoſe Head is never idle, finding that Whiſpers and baſe Stories ſpread about did not hurt *Georigetti*, or withdraw his Subjects Affections, has tried a Means to make him undo himſelf. As how? ſays I. Why, ſaid he, by cloſely playing his Game he has got one of his Relations into the King's Service, than whom he could never have choſen a fitter Inſtrument. He by degrees feeding the King's Humour, and promiſing Mountains, has puſhed into the beſt Places in the Kingdom: His Name is *Barbarſa*, a moſt inſolent Man, who has had the Aſſurance to corrupt the King's Miſtreſs, and has prevailed and brought her over to his Intereſt. O Perfidy! ſays I, is it poſſible? Yes, ſays he, and more than that has drawn in, till now, an honeſt Man, called *Nicar*; and it has been agreed between them to protract this War, till by their Stratagems in procuring the Revolt of *Gauingrunt*, a very large and populous Province, and now the Barrier

between us and the Rebels, and two or three more Places, they ſhall have perſuaded *Georigetti* to fly; and then *Barbarſa* is to be King, and *Yaccombourſe* his Queen. A Union is then to be ſtruck between him and *Harlokin*, and Peace made, by reſtoring ſome of the ſurrendered Provinces. And upon the Death of the firſt of them, or their Iſſue, childleſs, the Survivor, or his Iſſue, is to take the whole. They laugh at your uniting the Dominions, and the old Prediction.

Theſe, ſaid I, *Naſgig* are ſerious things, and, as you ſay, are not lightly to be talked of; but *Naſgig* know this, he that conceals them is a Traitor. Can you prove this? I have heard them ſay ſo, ſays *Naſgig*. How, ſays I, and not diſcover it? I am as anxious for that as you can be, ſays he; but for me to be caſhiered, ſlit, and ſent to *Craſhdoorpt*, only for meaning well, without Power to perfect my good Intentions, where will be the Benefit to my Maſter or me? When and where did you hear this? ſays I. Several, and ſeveral times, ſays he, in my own Bed. In your own Bed, ſays I? I'll tell you, ſays he, it ſo happens that when I reſt at the Palace, as I am bound to do when on Duty, there is a particular Bed for me: Now as the whole Palace is cut out of one ſolid Rock, tho' *Yaccombourſe*'s Apartment at the Entrance is at prodigious Diſtance from the Entrance to

mine, yet my Bed, and one in an inner Apartment of hers, ſtand cloſe together; the Partition indeed is Stone, but either from the Thinneſs of it, or ſome Flaw in it I have not yet diſcovered, I can plainly hear every Word that is ſpoken. And there it is, in their Hours of Dalliance, when they uſe this Bed, that I hear what I have now told you. Say nothing of it, ſays I, but leave the Iſſue to me.

By this time the Meſſenger returned with *Maleck*, and he and I ſoon agreeing, I took him into my Service.

I went to Bed as uſual, but could get no Reſt, *Naſgig*'s Story ingroſſing my whole Attention. I was reſolved however to be better informed, before I acquainted the King of it. But riſing pretty early next Morning, the King came into my Chamber, leaning upon *Barbarſa*, to tell me he had received an Expreſs that *Gauingrunt* had revolted. *Peter*, ſays he, behold a diſtreſſed Monarch, nay an undone Monarch. Great Sir, ſays *Barbarſa*, you afflict yourſelf too much; here is Mr. *Peter* come to aſſiſt you, and he will ſettle all your Concerns, never fear. I eyed the Man, and, tho' Prejudice may hang an honeſt Perſon, found him a Villain in his Heart; for even while he was forcing a feeling Tone of Affliction, he was ſtaring at my laced Hat and Feather that lay on the Seat, by which I was ſure nothing could be at a greater Diſtance than his Heart

Heart and Tongue. His ſham Concern put me within a Moment of ſeizing him in the King's Preſence; but his Majeſty, at that Inſtant ſpeaking, diverted me.

Before the King left me, I told him, having certain Propoſitions to make to the Moucheratt next Day, it was poſſible they might require Time to conſider of them; wherefore it would be proper, at this critical Time, to let them meet every other Day, Buſineſs or none, till this Affair was over. The King ordered *Barbarſa* to ſee it was ſo, and then we parted.

CHAP. XII.

Hold a Moucheratt; Speeches of Ragams and Colambs; Peter *ſettles Religion; informs the King of a Plot; ſends* Naſgig *to the Ship for Cannon.*

ATTENDING at the Moucheratt To-day, I happened to be ſeated within two Paces of the Idol. There was the moſt numerous Aſſembly that had ever been ſeen; and when all was quiet, the King opened with ſignifying the Revolt of *Gauingrunt*, the Approach of the Enemy, and no Forces in the Field to ſtop them. This, he ſet forth in Terms ſo moving, that the whole Aſſembly were melted into Sighs; till one of the *Colambs* riſing up, ſays he, His Majeſty has ſet forth the State of his Affairs in ſuch a manner, and I am ſatisfied a true one, that it becomes us all to be vigilant. We all ſeem to have, and I believe have great Faith, in the Remedy this Day to be propoſed to us, in anſwer to our ancient Prediction. And as I doubt not but Glumm *Peter* is the Man; ſo I doubt not, but thro' his Management, we ſhall ſtill receive Help; but let us conſider, if we might not have prevented theſe preſſing Evils, and eſpecially this laſt, by ſpeedier Preparations againſt them. What Province, or Member of a State will not revolt

to

to a numerous Hoſt juſt ready to devour them, if they can receive no Aſſiſtance from their Head? for to my certain Knowledge, his Majeſty had ordered this almoſt a Year ago, and not a Man gone yet. Can we expect *Peter* to go ſingly to fight an Army? Did your Prediction ſay he ſhould go alone? No, he ſhall ſlay, that is, he and his Army; what is done by them, being always attributed to their General. Inquire therefore into your paſt Conduct, ſend *Peter* your General, and truſt to the great Image.

His Majeſty then ſaid, if there had been any Remiſſneſs in executing his Commands, he believed it was done with a View to his Service; but a more proper Opportunity might be found for an Inquiry of that Nature. As for the preſent Moucheratt, it was called ſolely to propoſe to *Peter* the Execution of the remaining Part of the Prediction; or at leaſt ſuch part of it, as ſeems now, or never, to wait its Accompliſhment.

Here, aroſe a Ragam, and told the Aſſembly in the Name of himſelf and Brethren, That the Prediction had never yet been applicable to any one Perſon, till Glumm *Peter* arrived; and that his Sagacity of itſelf was a ſufficient Recommendation of him to the Guidance of the Enterprize; and requeſted, that Glumm *Peter* might forthwith be declared Protector of the Army, and ſet forward with it, that the State might receive Safety, and the great Image its proper Honour.

I could now hold out no longer, but ſtanding up, made my Speech in the following manner, or very near it. "Mighty King, you reverend "Ragams, and honourable *Colambs*, with the "good People of this auguſt Aſſembly: I am "come hither, led by the Force of your own "Prediction, at the Requeſt of his Majeſty and "the States, at the Peril of my Life, to accom-"pliſh things ſaid to be predicted of me Glumm "*Peter*. If then you have a Prediction; if then "your Prediction deſcribes me, and the Cir-"cumſtances of theſe times; it conſiſting of ſe-"veral parts, they ought ſeriouſly to be weighed, "that I may know when and where I am to "begin my Operation; and when and where "to leave off: For in Predictions, the whole is "to be accompliſhed as much as any Member "of it.

"It is ſaid, I ſhall deſtroy the Traitor of the "Weſt; I am ready to enter upon it, ſettle the "ancient Limits of your Monarchy; are you "willing therefore that ſhould be done? yea or "nay?" Then every one anſwered yea. "And "by common Conſent, eſtabliſh what the old "Ragam would have taught you." Here the King roſe up; but *Barbarſa* giving him a Touch, for every one waited to be guided by the Voice of the Ragams; he ſat down again, and no one anſwering yea. I again put the ſame Queſtion and told them, as it was their own Concern, I would

would have an Anſwer before I proceeded. One of the Ragams then roſe and ſaid, that part of the Prediction was too looſe to be relied on; for it was to ſettle what he would have taught: Now who knows, ſays he, what he would have taught? The Aſſembly pauſed a conſiderable time; and juſt as I was opening my Mouth to ſpeak, an ancient and venerable Ragam roſe; ſays he, I am ſorry at my Years to find the Truth wants an Advocate; my Age and Infirmities might well have excuſed me from ſpeaking in this Aſſembly; ſo many of my Brethren being preſent, younger and better qualified for that Purpoſe than myſelf; but, as we are upon a ſacred thing, and leaſt, as I find none of them care to declare the Truth, I ſhould alſo be thought to conſent to its Suppreſſion, if I ſat ſilent and ſuffered it to be hid under a Quibble: I muſt beg to be heard a few Words. My Brother who ſpoke laſt ſays, the Words are too looſe, which ſay, *and by common Conſent eſtabliſh what I would have taught*; but, I beg leave to think it far otherwiſe; for we all know what he would have taught, and the Memory of that hath been as exactly kept as the Prediction: For how could our Anceſtors have oppoſed his Doctrine, but from hearing and diſapproving it; And we all know, not only the Prediction, but the Doctrine hath been punctually handed down to us; tho' wo be to us, we have not proclaimed it as we have the Prediction; and

let

let me tell you, when you my Brethren ſeverally come to my Years, and have but a ſingle Step further to Hoximo, you will wiſh you had taught it, as I do; who do believe and approve it.

The poor old Man having ſpoke as long as his Breath and Spirits would permit him, ſat down; and I again reſumed the Queſtion, as I now thought on a much better Foundation than before, and was immediately told by another Ragam, that there would be no End of the Aſſembly, if we conſidered every Point at once; for we might next go upon what Countries we ſhould conquer, and of whom to demand Tribute; which would be debating about the Fruit, before the Seed was ſown. But his Opinion was, to go on and quell the Rebellion, and reſtore the Monarchy, and then go upon the other Points.

I told them, if they made ſo light of the Prediction, as not to declare publickly, ſince they knew it, what the Ragam would have taught; it ill became me, to be more zealous in their own Concerns than they were themſelves; and I ſhould imagine there was very little Truth in any part of it, and would never hazard my Life for their ſakes, who would not ſpeak the Truth to ſave the Kingdom; and deſired Leave of the States for my Departure; for I was not a Perſon I told them, to be cajoled into any thing. I undertook it at firſt voluntarily; and no Man could, or ſhould compel me to it; my Life they might take,

take, but my Honour they ſhould never ſtain; tho' I was aſſured I could eaſily with their Concurrence, compleat all that related to them.

The ſenior *Colamb* immediately riſing, deſired me to have a little Patience, and not to leave the Aſſembly, for I was going out, till I had heard him.

Here is, ſays he, this Day a thing ſtarted, which I think, every whit as much concerns us all, and the Body, and every Member of the People to know, as it does *Peter*; and I am ſurprized, unleſs the preſent Ragams believe what their Predeceſſor would have taught to be better than what they now teach, for nothing elſe can make us conſent to it, that they ſhould ſcruple to let us know it, and keep us ignorant, who are Worſhippers as well as themſelves, of any Matter which ſo nearly concerns us to know. I am for obliging the Ragams to declare the Truth. If this be a true Prediction, all the Relatives to it are true; and I inſiſt that we hear it.

This Speech imboldened ſeveral others, and all the Populace, ſiding with the *Colambs* out of Curioſity, cryed out to know it.

Perceiving the Ragams ſtill huſh, I roſe and beckoning the Populace to ſilence: "Mighty "King, you honourable *Colambs*, and you good "People, ſays I, for it is to you I now ſpeak, "hear me with Attention. You think perhaps "that the Suppreſſion of the Truth by your "Ragams,

" Ragams, (charged to their Teeth by the moſt " Reverend of their whole Body, whoſe Infir- " mities rendering him unable, tho' his Will is " good, to declare this Secret to you) will pre- " vent the Knowledge of that Truth your old " Ragam would have taught; but you are miſ- " taken, and that you may know I don't come " here at a venture to try if I can relieve you, " but with an Aſſurance of doing it if you con- " ſent: I muſt let you know, from me, what " the Ragam would have taught. The Ragam " would have demoliſhed this trumpery Piece " of Dirt, this Grimalken, ſet out with hor- " rid Face and Colour to fright Children; this, " I ſay, he would have demoliſhed, being aſ- " ſured it could neither do good or hurt, give " Joy or Grief to any Man, or ſerve any other " Purpoſe whatſoever, but to procure a Mainte- " nance to a Set of Men, who know much better " than they dare to tell you. Can any of you be- " lieve this ſtupid Piece of Earth hears me?" Some of the Ragams cried *Yes*. " And that he " can revenge any Affront I ſhall give him?" Again, *Yes to be ſure*. " Let him then if he " dare, ſays I," whipping out my Cutlaſs, and with the Backſide of it ſtriking its Head off. " This, ſays I, O Glumms, is what the Ragam " knew, and what I defy them to deny. Now, " ſays I, I will further ſhew you, to whom the " old Ragam would have taught you to make " your Petitions, and pay your Adoration; and

" that

" that is, to the Supreme Being, Maker of " Heaven and Earth, of us and all things; who " provides for us Meat and Drink, and all things; " by cauſing the Earth which he has made, to " produce things neceſſary for our Uſe. That " Being, whom you have heard of by the Name " of *Collwarr*, and are taught, at preſent, to " be afraid to ſpeak to. And I appeal to your " own Hearts, if many of you have ever thought " of him. Again, ſays I, let any thing in the " Shape of Man, that gives himſelf leave to " conſider at all, only tell me, if what he can " make, and does make with his own Hands, " hath not more Occaſion to depend on him as " its Maker, than he on that? Why then " ſhould not we depend upon, and pray to our " Maker?

" You greatly miſtake me, O Glumms, ſays " I, if you imagine I would have all thoſe re- " verend Men turned out of Imployment as " uſeleſs. No, I find they know too much of " what is valuable; and therefore thoſe who are " willing to continue in the Service of the Mouch, " and faithfully to teach you the old Ragam's " Doctrine, and ſuch further Lights of the great " Being as they ſhall hereafter receive, let them " continue your Ragams ſtill; and let others be " choſen, and trained up in that Doctrine."

Here, the poor old Man got up again with much Difficulty. Mr. *Peter*, ſays he, you are the

the Man predicted of, you have declared the old Ragam's Mind, and all my Brethren know it.

Finding I had the Populace on my ſide, for I did not doubt the King and the *Colambs*. I put the Queſtion to the Ragams: "Reverend, ſays "I, you ſee your Prediction this Day about to "be fulfilled; for if it is a true one, no Force "of Man can withſtand it. You ſee your Image "diſgraced; you ſee, and I appeal to you all for "the Truth of it, that what the Ragam would "have taught has, without your Aſſiſtance been "diſcloſed. I therefore would have you the "firſt to break the Bondage of Idolatry, and "turn to the true *Collwarr*; as it will be ſo "much Glory to you. Will you, and which "of you, from henceforth ſerve *Collwarr*, and "no longer worſhip an Idol? Such of you as "will do ſo, let them continue in the Mouch: "If none of you will, it ſhall be my Buſineſs "to qualify a ſufficient Number of true Ragams, "to form a Succeſſion for that Purpoſe. The "Iſſue of this great Affair, depends upon your "Anſwers." They waited ſometime for a Spokeſman to begin; and ſo ſoon as he was able to get up, the poor old Ragam ſaid, I will continue in it, and do all the little good I can; and bleſſed be the Day this Prediction is fulfilled, to ſucceeding Generations. I have lived long enough to have ſeen this. Then the reſt of the Ragams, one by one, followed his Example. And thus, with

with prodigious Acclamations both of the Ragams and People, ended the great Affair of Religion.

I now, more and more believed the Truth of the Prediction; and told them, I ſhould have Occaſion for ſeven hundred Men before I ſet out againſt the Rebels; and deſired that they might be commanded by *Naſgig*. This was readily granted. I then told them, as I purpoſed to act nothing without their Concurrence, I deſired the *Colambs* would remain in the City till I ſat out, that they might be readily called together.

I then deſired I might be quite private from Company, till I departed.

I took *Naſgig* home with me, and when we came there; my dear Friend, ſays he, what have you done to Day! You have cruſhed a Power hitherto immoveable; and I ſhall never more think any thing too difficult for you to attempt. *Naſgig*, ſays I, I am glad it is over. And now, ſays I, you muſt enter on a new Imploy; but firſt, can you provide me fifty honeſt, faithful Glumms, for a particular Expedition? they muſt be ſenſible, cloſe, and temporizing. He ſaid he would, and come to me again.

I then deſired a private Audience of the King; who, on ſeeing me, began upon my Succeſs at the Moucheratt. I told his Majeſty, if I alone, and a Stranger, could gain ſuch Influence there; I might have had much more, if he had joined me; eſpecially as he had told me, he gave no

Credit

Credit to the Image; and that I expected he would have appeared on my ſide. Ah! *Peter*, ſays he, Monarchs neither ſee, hear, or perceive with their own Eyes, Ears, or Underſtandings. I would willingly have done it; but *Barbarſa* prevented me, by aſſuring me it would be my Ruin; and as he is my Boſom Friend, what Reproaches muſt I have ſuffered, if it had gone amiſs? Nay, I will tell you; that he and *Nicor* are of Opinion, that your coming hither, which is looked upon by us all as ſuch a Bleſſing, will one Day undo me: For, ſay they, tho' he may perform what you expect from him, it is not to be ſuppoſed he ſhould ſuffer it to redound to you. No, ſay they, if he can do theſe great things, he can ſoon ſet you aſide. Thus, tho' I have no doubt of you, is my Spirit waſting within me thro' perpetual Fears and Jealouſies; and I can't get theſe Men, who knowing all my Secrets are feared by me, into my own way of thinking.

Mighty Sir, ſays I, don't think I came hither to poſſeſs, but redreſs a Kingdom. I lived far more to my Eaſe in my Grotto, than I can in this Palace; but I now deſire you, drawing my Sword and putting it into his Hand, to pierce this Heart's Blood, and make yourſelf eaſy in my Death, rather than, ſuffering me to ſurvive, live in diſtruſt of me. No, great King, ſays I, it is not I that would injure you; but, tho' I have been ſo ſhort a time in your Dominions, I find there

there are thoſe, who would; and will too, unleſs you exert the Monarch and ſhake off thoſe Harpies, which lying always at your Ear, are ever buzzing Diſquiet and Miſchief to you. *Peter*, ſays he, what do you mean? ſure I have not more Traitors in my State? Your Majeſty has, ſays I. How can you prove it? ſays he. But pray inform me who they are? I came not hither great King, ſays I, to turn Informer, but Reformer; and ſo far as that is neceſſary in order to this, I will give you Satisfaction. I only deſire you will wholly guide yourſelf by my Direction for three Days; and you ſhall be able to help yourſelf to all the Information you can require, without my telling you. In the mean time, appear no more thoughtful than uſual, or in any other way alter your accuſtomed Habits.

Naſgig having ſent me the fifty Men, I aſked them if they were to be truſted, and if they could carefully and artfully execute a Commiſſion I had to charge them with. They aſſuring me they would, I told them I would let them into my Deſign, which would be the beſt Inſtructions I could give them, and let the Management alone to them.

My Confidence in them made them twice as diligent as all the particular Directions in the World would have done; ſo I only told them I had a mind the revolted Towns, and alſo the Enemy's Army, ſhould know that the Perſon ſo long

long ago predicted of was now at *Brandleguarp*, and had, as the firſt Step towards reducing them, and killing the Traitor *Harlokin*, already altered their Religion to the old Ragam's Plan; and that they had nothing now to expect but Deſtruction to themſelves, as ſoon as I appeared againſt them with my unknown Fire and Smoke, which I always had with me; and that the thing was looked upon to be as good as done already at *Brandleguarp*; and then to ſlip away again unperceived. They all promiſed me exact Performance, and went off.

Naſgig then coming in, I told him he was now under my Command, and muſt take ſix hundred Glums with him to *Graundevolet*; tell *Youwarkee* to ſhew him my Ship, and then he muſt bring me the things I had deſcribed to her by the Name of Cannon; he muſt bring them by Ropes, as I was brought; and bring Powder, which ſhe would direct him to, and about fifty heavy Balls which lay in the Room with the Powder. I told him, if he thought he ſhould not have Men enough, he muſt take more; and muſt be as expeditious as was conſiſtent with Safety. I deſired him to tell *Youwarkee* I hoped in a ſhort time to ſend for her, and all the Family, over to me. And now *Naſgig*, ſays I, my Orders are finiſhed; but, ſays I, the King! I muſt aſſiſt that good Man. I therefore want to know the particular Times *Barbarſa* and

Yaccombourſe

Yaccombourſe uſually meet. That, ſays he, is every Night when ſhe is not with the King; for he is exceſſive fond of her, and ſeldom lies without her; but whenever he does, *Barbarſa* is admitted to her. And how can I know, ſays I, when ſhe will, or will not lie with the King? When ſhe is to lie with him, ſays he, the King never ſups without her. Now, ſays I, you muſt ſhew me your Lodging, that I may find it in your Abſence; and give Orders to the Guard to let me, and whoever comes with me, enter at any time. He then took me to his Chamber; but I paſſed thro' ſo many Rooms, Galleries, and Paſſages, that I was ſure I ſhould never find it again, ſo I aſked him if *Maleek* knew the way; and he aſſuring me he did, I took my Leave of him, and he ſet out for *Graundevolet*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

The King hears Barbarſa *and* Yaccombourſe *diſcourſe on the Plot; they are impeached by* Peter *at a Moucheratt; condemned and executed;* Nicor *ſubmits, and is releaſed.*

I Had now ſeveral important Irons in the Fire, and all to be ſtruck whilſt hot: There was the ſecuring Religion, ſowing Sedition amongſt the Enemy, tripping up the Heels of two Miniſters, and a She-Favourite, and tranſporting Artillery in the Air ſome hundred Leagues; either of which failing, might have been of exceeding bad Conſequence; but as the Affair of the Miniſters now lay next at hand, I entred upon that in the following Manner.

The King coming to me the next Day, as by Appointment; and having aſſured me he had hinted nothing to any one, no not to *Barbarſa*, or *Yaccombourſe*, told me, that *Barbarſa* had given Orders for ſtopping *Naſgig* and his Men; and had perſuaded him not to be in ſuch haſte in ſuffering me to do as I pleaſed, but to ſhew his Authority, and keep me under. Says I, your Majeſty's Safety is ſo near my Heart, that even Want of Confidence in me ſhall not make me decline my Endeavours to ſerve you. But have you ſuffered him to ſtop *Naſgig?* No, ſays he,

Naſgig

Naſgig was gone ſome time before he ſent. O! Sir, ſays I, you do not half know the Worth of that Man! but you ſhall hereafter, and will reward him accordingly: But now, Sir, ſays I, to what we meet upon; if you will, as I told you, but comply with me for three Days, without aſking Queſtions, I will ſhew you the greateſt Traitors in your Dominions, and put them into your Power too. He promiſed me again he would. Then, Sir, ſays I, you muſt not ſend to *Yaccombourſe* to ſup with you To-night. Nor lie with me? No, ſays I. Pray what Hurt can ariſe to my Affairs from her, ſays he? Sir, ſays I, you promiſed me to aſk no Queſtions. Agreed, agreed, ſays he. Then, ſays I, pleaſe to meet me at *Naſgig*'s Lodgings without being perceived, if you can; at leaſt without Notice taken. Good, ſays he; and when you are there, ſee or hear what you will you muſt not ſay a Word till you are retired again: All which the King engaging to perform, we parted till Evening.

I called *Maleck*, and aſked if he knew the way to *Naſgig*'s Lodging. He told me very well; and the Time being come, he conducted me thither; where I had not waited long before the King came, moſt of the Court being in Bed. I deſired the King to ſtay in the outer Room till I went into the Bed-chamber two or three times, and I thought we muſt have put it off till another Night: But liſtening once again, I

found they were come; ſo I called the King, and led him to the Place; intreating him, whatever he heard to keep his Patience, or he would ruin all. We firſt heard much amorous Diſcourſe between *Barbarſa* and *Yaccombourſe*, and then the enſuing Dialogue.

Yac. My deareſt *Barbarſa*, what was all that Uproar at the Moucheratt the other Day?

Bar. Nothing, my Love, but that mad Fellow *Peter*, who ſets up for a Conjurer, and wants us all to dance to his Pipe.

Yac. I heard he overcame the Ragams at an Argument about the Image.

Bar. Why I don't know how that was; but it was the doating old Ragam did their Buſineſs; and truly the King's Fingers itched to be on *Peter*'s Side, but I gave him a judicious Nod, and you know he durſt not diſpleaſe ſo dear a Friend as I am, ha, ha, ha; am not I a ſad Fellow, my Love, to talk ſo of my King?

Yac. He that wants but one Step to a Throne, is almoſt a King's Fellow.

Bar. And that but a ſhort one too, my dear *Yaccee*; but I muſt get rid of that *Naſgig*, tho' I think I have almoſt ſpoiled him with the King too. I don't love your thinking Raſcals; that Fellow thinks more than I do, *Yaccee*.

Yac. He'll never think to ſo good Purpoſe, I believe; but how goes Couſin *Harlokin* on, I find *Gauingrunt* is gone over.

Bar.

Bar. And ſo ſhall *Bazin*, *Iſtell*, *Pezele*, and *Ginkatt* too, my Dear, for I am at work there; and then good Night, my poor King *Georigetti*; thou ſhalt be adviſed to fly, and I'll keep the Throne warm for thee. I don't ſee but King *Barbarſa*, and Queen *Yaccombourſe*, ſound much better than *Georigetti*. Well, my Dear, whenever we come to Sovereignty, which now can't be long, if *Nicor* has but play'd his Part well, for I have not had an Account of his Succeſs yet; I ſay, when we come into Power, never let us be above minding our own Affairs, or ſuffer ourſelves to be led by the Noſe, as this poor inſignificant King does. For, in ſhort, he may as well be a King of Matts, as a King of Fleſh, if he will not uſe his Faculties, but ſuffer me to make a Fool of him thus; and I ſhould be a Fool indeed to neglect it, when he thinks it the greateſt Piece of Service I can do him.

Yac. Come, come, my Dear, let us enjoy ourſelves like King and Queen till we come to the Dignity.

Finding a Pauſe, the King, who had admirably kept his Temper, even beyond Imagination, ſtole into the outer Room. *Peter*, ſays he, I thank you, you have ſhewn me myſelf. What Fools are we Kings! In endeavouring to make others happy, how miſerable do we make

ourſelves! How eaſily are we deceived by the deſigning Flattery of thoſe below us? Ungrateful Villian! Degenerate Strumpet! I hate you both. *Peter*, ſays he, give me your Sword; I'll deſtroy them both in the very Act.

Hold, Sir, ſays I, your Majeſty has heard ſufficient to found a true Judgment upon; but Kings ſhould not be Executioners, or act by Paſſion and Revenge; but as you would puniſh that in others, ſo carefully avoid it yourſelf. You, who are in ſo exalted a Station, as always to have it in your Power to puniſh a known Crime in Individuals, have not that Neceſſity to prompt you to a violent Act, that private Perſons have; to whom, it may be difficult to obtain Juſtice. Therefore, my Advice is, that you ſummon the *Colambs* To-morrow; when *Barbarſa* and *Nicor* can't fail to attend; and I would alſo deſire *Yaccombourſe* to be there, you having great Propoſals to make to the States which you ſhall want her to hear. I will in the mean time prepare the Servants under *Quilly*, and order *Maleck* with another Poſſee to attend, as by your Command, to execute your Orders given by me; and I myſelf will impeach thoſe bad Perſons in publick; and *Nicor*, if he will not ingenuouſly confeſs what Commiſſion he was charged with from *Barbarſa*, ſhall be put to the Torture I direct, till he diſcovers it.

The

The King was very well pleaſed with this Method; ſo I ordered *Quilly*, as from the King, to bring all my Servants to the Aſſembly, appointing him his Place. And *Maleck*, to ſelect me fifty ſtout Perſons, and to wait to execute my Orders on a Signal given. So ſoon as the Aſſembly met, I told them, ſince I had concerned myſelf in their Affairs, I had made it my Buſineſs to ſearch into the Cauſe of their Calamities; and finding ſome of the Traitors were now approached, not only near to, but even into the capital City; his Majeſty had therefore ordered me to aſk their Advice, what Puniſhment was adequate, in their Judgments, to the Crime of conſpiring againſt him and the State, and holding treaſonable Correſpondence with his Enemies, under the ſhew of his greateſt Friends.

I ſtopped; and looking at *Barbarſa*, he turned as pale as Aſhes, and was riſing to ſpeak; when the ſenior *Colamb* declared, If any ſuch thing could be made appear, the common Puniſhment of *Craſhdoorpt* was too trivial; but they deſerved to be dropt alive, either into *Hoximo*, or Mount *Alkoe*. The ſeveral *Colambs* all declaring the ſame to be their Judgment, and even thoſe to be too mild for their Deſerts, I then ſtept up to *Barbarſa*, who ſat at the King's Left-hand, as did *Yaccombourſe* at his Right; and telling them and *Nicor* they were all Priſoners of State; I delivered *Barbarſa* and *Yaccombourſe* in Cuſtody to

Quilly and his Men, and *Nicor*, to *Maleck* and his Men; ordering them into ſeparate Apartments, with ſtrict Commands that neither ſhould ſpeak to the other, upon pain of the laſt pronounced Judgment.

Barbarſa would have ſpoke, and called out to the King, begging him not to deſert ſo faithful a Servant, for the Inſinuations of ſo vile a Man as *Peter:* But the King only told him, the vile Man would be made appear preſently, and he hoped would meet his Deſerts.

I then ſtood up, and told the Aſſembly the whole of what we had heard, how it firſt came to be diſcovered, and that the King himſelf had been an Ear-witneſs of it; which the King confirming, the whole Aſſembly rang with Confuſion; and Revenge and Indignation appeared in every Face.

I then propoſed, as we yet knew not what that ſecret Commiſſion was which *Nicor* was charged with, having enough againſt the reſt, that *Nicor* might be brought forth; and, upon Refuſal to anſwer, be put to the Torture.

Nicor appearing before the Aſſembly; I told him, I was commanded by the King, to aſk him what Commiſſion he was charged with by *Barbarſa*, and to whom. I told him, the ſafeſt way for his Life, his Honour, and his Country, was to make a true Confeſſion at firſt; or, I had Authority to put him to the Torture: For,

as

as for Slitting and Baniſhment, as they were too ſlight to atone for this Offence, he might reſt ſatisfied, his would be of another ſort, if he heſitated at delivering the thing in its full Truth.

My Prelude terrifying him; he openly confeſſed, that his laſt Commiſſion was to ſeveral Towns, as from the King, and with his Gripſack, to order their Submiſſion to *Harlokin*; the King not being in any Condition to relieve them; and that as ſoon as they had ſubmitted, *Harlokin* would be let into this City, which could not ſtand againſt him.

He alſo declared, that it had been agreed, and the Boundaries ſettled, how far *Barbarſa*, who was to be declared King and marry *Yaccombourſe*, ſhould govern, and how far *Harlokin*. That *Barbarſa* was to be ſtiled King of the Eaſt, and *Harlokin* King of the Weſt, and that either of them, on the other's dying childleſs, was to inherit the whole Monarchy.

The King declaring this to be all true, and that by my Procurement he heard it all mentioned but the laſt Night, between *Barbarſa* and *Yaccombourſe*, as they were ſolacing themſelves in Bed; the whole Aſſembly ordered them to be brought out, carried with Cords about their Necks, and precipitated into Mount *Alkoe*.

I then begged they might be ſuffered to ſpeak for themſelves before Execution; and acquainting them ſeverally with the Evidence; I firſt aſked

Barbarſa, what he had to ſay againſt his Sentence; he declared his Ambition, and the Eaſineſs of his Maſter's Temper, had inſtigated him to attempt what had been charged upon him; having as he thought, a fair Opportunity of ſo doing. I then aſked *Yaccombourſe* the ſame Queſtion; ſhe anſwered me, her Ambition had been her ſole Governour from a Child, and I had done my worſt in preventing the Progreſs of that; and whatever elſe I could do, was not worth her Notice: But, to have reigned, ſays ſhe, with ſome Emotion, was worth the Lives of Millions, and over-balanced every thing.

I pleaded hard for *Nicor*, as I perceived him to be only the Favourite's Favourite, and not in the Scrape for his own Views, more than what he might merit from his new Maſter: And, as he had declared the Truth, and I believed I might make further Uſe of him, I obtained that he might be only committed to me; and that I might have Liberty of pardoning or ſlitting, as I ſaw fit. And, as I expected, he afterwards proved very uſeful to me and my Deſigns, and I pardoned him.

Before the Aſſembly roſe, a Party of the Natives of Mount *Alkoe*, were ordered to convey *Yaccombourſe* and *Barbarſa* to the Mountain, ſlit their Graundees, and drop them there. And thus ended the Lives of theſe two aſpiring Perſons.

When

When I came home, I called *Nicor* before me. You know, ſays I, *Nicor*, you are obliged to me for this Moment of your Life; but I don't remind you of it for any return I want to myſelf; but, as you are ſenſible my Endeavours are to ſerve this State, I offer you Life and Freedom, upon Condition you employ your utmoſt Diligence to repair your paſt Conduct, by a free Declaration of every thing in your Power, that may be for the Benefit of the Kingdom; as you know the Springs, by which all theſe bad Movements have been ſet at work. And I deſire your Opinion, how beſt to counteract the Schemes formed, and redreſs the Evils.

Nicor being fully convinced of his Error, and having loſt his Patron, was very ſubmiſſive; and declared, he believed none of the Provinces would have gone over to *Harlokin*, unleſs they had thought it was the King's Order *Barbarſa* had acted by; which by hearing his Gripſack, they made no doubt of. He adviſed to ſend Expreſſes with the King's Gripſack, to ſuch Places as had lately ſubmitted, and to ſuch as were about it, to put a ſtop to them. I told him, I had done that; but not by the Gripſack, ſays he, and unleſs they ſee and hear that, they will give no Credit to the Meſſage. He then gave me ſome particular Hints in other Affairs, of no mean Conſequence: And ſeeing him truly under concern, and, to my thinking, ſincere in what he

ſaid, I told him, I was an abſolute Enemy to Confinement, and if any Perſon of Repute would engage he ſhould be forthcoming upon all Occaſions, that I might have Recourſe to him, I would let him have his Liberty.

Poor *Nicor*, as it commonly happens to great Men in Diſgrace, finding himſelf abandoned by all his Friends, after trying every body; dropping ſome Tears, told me next Morning, he was highly ſenſible of what a Dye his Offences had been; for that not one amongſt all his former Friends would even look upon him in his preſent Circumſtances; wherefore he muſt ſubmit to Fate.

Nicor having borne a good Character before ſeduced by *Barbarſa*; and knowing that an obliged Enemy often becomes the ſincereſt Friend; I preſſed him again to try his Friends. He told me, every body was ſhy of engaging in ſuch an Affair; and that he had rather ſuffer himſelf, than meanly to intreat any one into an unwilling Compliance. Come, *Nicor*, ſays I, will you be your own Security to me? may I take your own Word? He ſaid, he could not expect that; for as the Terror of ſlitting lay over him, and in my Hands too, he could not anſwer, but he might deceive me, in caſe he ſhould conceive I had a Deſign againſt him; which I myſelf too might have from a miſtaken Motive.

Why

Why then, *Nicor*, ſays I, you are free; now uſe your own Diſcretion. I think, you will never cauſe my Judgment to be impeached for what I have done; but if you do, I can't condemn myſelf for it, and hope I ſhall have no reaſon to repent it.

Nicor fell at my Feet, embraced them, and was ſo overcome with my Generoſity to him, that I could with Difficulty prevail on him to riſe again; ſaying he was now, more than ever, aſhamed to ſee my Face. I told him, I had not done with him; but would uſe him henceforth as my Friend; and ordered him to call upon me daily, for I might have ſeveral Occaſions for him; and truly, next to *Naſgig*, he proved the uſefulleſt Man in the Kingdom.

CHAP. XIV.

Naſgig *returns with the Cannon*; Peter *informs him of the Execution*; *appoints him a Guard*; *ſettles the Order of his March againſt* Harlokin; *Combat between* Naſgig *and the Rebel-General*; *the Battle*; Peter *returning with* Harlokin's *Head, is met by a Sweecoan*; *a public Feſtival*; *Slavery aboliſhed.*

THE tenth Day *Naſgig* arrived, whilſt I happened to be in the King's Garden; and hearing the Trumpet coming before, I called out to him, to give *Naſgig* Notice where I was, and to deſire him to alight there.

After Ceremonies paſt, and I had enquired after my Wife and Children, and his Anſwers had informed me of their Healths; Well, ſays *Naſgig*, my Friend, am I to live or die? Explain yourſelf, ſays I. Nay, I only mean, ſays he, have you diſcovered me to the King? Pardon me, ſays I, dear *Naſgig*, I muſt own the Truth, I have. Then, ſays he, I ſuppoſe his Majeſty has no more Commands for me. No, ſays I, it is not ſo bad as that neither. But pray, ſays he, what ſays *Barbarſa* to it? O! nothing at all, ſays I, quite quiet. Nor *Yaccambourſe*; did you diſcover her Baſeneſs to the King? Yes, ſays I; and the King behaved like a King upon the Oc-

caſion. And where are they now, ſays he? Only in Mount *Alkoe*, ſays I. Mount *Alkoe!* replies he; what do you mean by that? how can they be in Mount *Alkoe?* did they go of their own Accords? They fled off, I ſuppoſe, with Ropes about their Necks, ſays I, as your Criminals go to *Craſhdoorpt*. Are they ſlit too, ſays he? No, ſays I, but ſlipt, I'll aſſure you. Come, my good Friend, I'll let you into the Hiſtory of it; and then I told all that had happened, and the King's Satisfaction at the Judgment of the Moucheratt. And now, ſays I, *Naſgig*, you may call yourſelf the Favourite, I promiſe you; for his Majeſty enjoys himſelf but to greet you on your Return: But have a care of Power; moſt grow giddy with it, and the next thing to that, is a Fall. Pray, ſays he, what is become of *Nicor?* is he under the ſame Condemnation? No, ſays I, *Nicor* is now by my Means abſolutely free; and no two greater than he and I. I told him then my Proceedings with him: He was glad of it, for he ſaid, *Nicor* he believed was honeſt at Bottom.

By this time up came the Cannon; and truly, had my Countrymen but the Graundee to convey their Cannon at ſo eaſy an Expence from place to place, the whole World would not ſtand before us. They brought me five Cannon, and three Swivel guns, and a larger Quantity of Ammunition than I had ſpoken for.

I introduced *Naſgig* to the King upon his Return, as the Perſon to whoſe Conduct the ſafe Arrival of my Cannon was owing. His Majeſty embracing him, told him, the Service he had done him was ſo great in the Affair of *Barbarſa*, and his Management of it ſo prudent, he ſhould from thenceforth take him into his peculiar Confidence and Eſteem.

Naſgig thanked his Majeſty for his Acceptance of that Act of his Duty; and deſired to know when he pleaſed the Operations for the Campaign ſhould begin. Aſk my Father, ſays the King; do you conduct the War, and let him conduct you.

Then *Naſgig* deſired to know, what Number of Troops would be requiſite. I aſked him, what Number the Enemy had; he ſaid about thirty thouſand. Then, ſays I, take you ſix only, beſides the Bearers of me and the Artillery; and pick me out fifty of the beſt Men you have, as a Guard for my Perſon, and ſend them to me.

I ſhewed theſe Men my Cutlaſſes and Piſtols, and ſhewed them the Uſe and Management of them; and ſays I, as our Enemies fight with Pikes, keep you at a Diſtance firſt; and when you would aſſault, toſs by the Pike with your Hand, and cloſing in have at the Graundee; and this Edge, ſhewing them the Sharpneſs of it, will ſtrip it down from Shoulder to Heel, you need ſtrike but once for it; but be ſure come near enough.

enough. Or, ſays I, if you find it difficult to turn aſide the Pike, give it one ſmart Stroke with this, it will cut it in two, and then the Point being gone, it will be uſeleſs.

Theſe Inſtructions, ſays I, if rightly obſerved, will make us Conquerors.

The next thing was, to ſettle the Order of my March, which I did in the following manner; and taking Leave of the King, I ſet out.

Firſt, Ten Companies of one hundred Men, including Officers, with each a Gripſack, in ten double Lines, fifty a-breaſt.

Secondly, Four hundred Bearers of the Cannon, with two hundred to the right, the like to the left, as Relays.

Thirdly, Two hundred Men with the Ammunition, Stores, Hatchets, and other Implements.

Fourthly, Fifty Body-guards, in two Lines.

Fifthly, Myſelf borne by eight; with twelve on the right, and as many on the left, for Relays.

Sixthly, Two thouſand Men in Columns, on each Side the Cannon, and me; fifty in a Line, double Lines.

Seventhly, One thouſand Men in the Rear, fifty in a Line, double Lines.

I conſulted with *Naſgig*, how *Harlokin*'s Army lay, that I might avoid the revolted Towns, rather chuſing to take them in my Return; for my Deſign was to encounter *Harlokin* firſt; and

I did not doubt if I conquered him, but the Towns would ſurrender of courſe.

When we arrived within a ſmall Flight of his Army, I cauſed a Halt at a proper place for my Cannon; and having pitched them, which I did by ſeveral flat Stones one on another to a proper Elevation; I loaded them, and alſo my ſmall Arms, conſiſting of ſix Muſkets, and three Brace of Piſtols; and placing my Army, two thouſand juſt behind me, two thouſand to my right, and the ſame Number to my left; I gave a ſtrict Command for none of them to ſtir forwards without Orders; which *Naſgig* who ſtood juſt behind me, was to give. I then ſent a Defiance to *Harlokin* by a Gripſack; who ſent me word, he fought for a Kingdom, and would accept it; and, as I heard afterwards, he was glad I did; for ſince the Intelligence I had ſcattered in his Army, they had in great Numbers deſerted him, and he was afraid it would have proved general. I then putting the End of a Match into a Piſtol-pan with a little Powder, by flaſhing, lighted it; and this I put under my Chair, for I ſat in that, with my Muſkets three on each ſide, a Piſtol in my Right-hand, and five more in my Girdle. In this manner I waited *Harlokin*'s coming, and in about an Hour we ſaw the Van of his Army, conſiſting of about five thouſand Men, who flew in five Layers, one over another. I had not loaded my Cannon with Ball, but ſmall ſized Stones, about ſixty in each;

each; and ſeeing the Length of their Line, I ſpread my Cannons Mouths ſomewhat wider than their Breaches, and then taking my Obſervation by a bright Star, for there was a clear Dawn all round the Horizon, I obſerved, as I retired to my Chair, how that Star anſwered to the Elevation of my Cannon; and when the foremoſt Ranks, who, not ſeeing my Men ſtir, were approaching almoſt over me to fall on them, and had come to my Pitch; I fired two Pieces of my Ordnance at once, and ſo mauled them, that there dropped about ninety upon the firſt Diſcharge, together with their Commander; the reſt, being in flight, and ſo cloſe together, not being able to turn faſt enough to fly, being ſtopped by thoſe behind them, not only hindred thoſe behind from turning about, but clogged up their own Paſſage: Seeing them in ſuch a prodigious Cluſter, I ſo ſucceſsfully fired two more Pieces, that I brought down double the Number of the firſt Shot; and then giving the Word to fall on, my Cutlaſs-Guard, and the Pikemen, did prodigious Execution. But fearing the main Body ſhould advance before we had got in Order again, I commanded them to fall back to their former Stations, and to let the Remainder of the Enemy go off.

This did me more good in the Event, than if I had killed twice as many; for they not only never returned themſelves, but flying ſome to the right, ſome to the left, and paſſing by the two

Wings

Wings of their own Army, conſiſting of ſix thouſand Men each; they ſeverally reported, that they were all that was left of the whole Van of the Army; and that the Prediction would certainly be fulfilled, for that their Companions had died by Fire and Smoak.—This Report ſtruck ſuch Terror into each Wing, that every one ſhifted for himſelf, and never appeared more.

The main Battle, conſiſting of about ten thouſand Men, knowing nothing of what had happened to the Wings, for *Harlokin* had ordered the Wings to take a great Compaſs round to incloſe us; hearing we were but an handful, advanced boldly; and as I had ordered my Men not to mount too high; the Enemy ſunk to their Pitch. When they came nearer, I aſked *Naſgig* who led them, and if it was *Harlokin*. He told me no, his General, but that he was behind; and, *Naſgig* begging me to let him try his Skill with the General, I conſented; they not being yet come to the Pitch of my Cannon. *Naſgig* immediately took the Graundee, and advancing ſingly with one of my Cutlaſſes in his Hand, challenged the General to ſingle Combat. He like a Man of Honour accepting it, ordered a Halt, and to it they went, each emulous of Glory, and of taking all the Advantage he could, ſo that they did not ſuddenly ſtrike or puſh; but ſometimes one, then the other was uppermoſt, and whirling expeditiouſly round, met almoſt

Breaſt

Breaſt to Breaſt; when the General, who had not a Pike, but a Pikeſtaff headed with a large Stone, gave *Naſgig* ſuch a Stroke on his Head, that he reeled and ſunk conſiderably; and I began to be in Pain for him, the General lowering after him. But *Naſgig* ſpringing forward beneath him, and riſing light as Air behind the General, had gained his Height again before the General could turn about to deſcern him; and then plunging forward, and receiving a Stroke a-croſs his Left-arm; at the ſame time he gave the General ſuch a Blow near the out-ſide of the Shoulder, as ſlit the Graundee almoſt down to his Hip, and took away part of the Fleſh of the Left-arm; upon which the General fell fluttering down in vaſt Pain, very near me; but not before *Naſgig*, in his Fall, deſcending, had taken another ſevere cut at him.

Immediately upon this Defeat, *Naſgig* again took his place behind me. Our Army ſhouting to the Skies; but no ſooner had the General dropt, but on came *Harlokin*, with Majeſty and Terror mixt in his Looks; and ſeeming to diſdain the Air he rode on, waved his Men to the Attack with his Hand. When he came near enough to hear me, I called him vile Traitor, to oppoſe the Army of his lawful Sovereign; telling him, if he would ſubmit, he ſhould be received to Mercy. Baſe creeping Inſect, ſays *Harlokin*, if thou haſt ought to ſay to me worth hearing,

meet

meet me in the Air? This Hand ſhall ſhew thee ſoon, who'll moſt want Mercy: And tho' I ſcorn to ſtoop to thee myſelf, this Meſſenger ſhall ſatisfy the World thou'rt an Impoſtor, and ſend thee lifeleſs back to the fond King that ſent thee hither. With that, he hurled a Javelin pointed with Flint, ſharp as a Needle at me; but I avoiding it: This then, ſays I, if Words won't do, ſhall juſtify the Truth of our Prediction: And then levelling a Muſket at him, I ſhot him thro' the very Heart, that he fell dead within twenty Paces of me; but perceiving another to take his Room, notwithſtanding the Confuſion my Muſket had made amongſt them, I ran to my Match, and giving fire to two more Pieces of Ordnance at the ſame time, they fell ſo thick about me, that I had enough to do to eſcape being cruſhed to Death by them, and the living Remainder ſeparating, fled quite away, and put an End to the War. I waited in the Field three Days, to ſee if they would make Head again; but they were ſo far from it, that before I could return, as I found afterwards, moſt of the revolting Provinces had ſent their Deputies, who themſelves carried the firſt News of the Defeat, to beg to be received into Mercy; all of whom were detained there, till my Return with *Harlokin*'s Head.

At my Return to *Brandleguarp*, I was met by the King, the *Colambs*, and almoſt the whole Body of the People; every Man, Woman, and Child,

Child, with two Sweecoe Lights in their Hands; which unuſual Sight in the Air, gave me great Alarm, till I inquired of *Naſgig* what it meant; who told me, it muſt certainly be a Sweecoan, or he knew not what it was. I aſking again, what he meant by that; he told me, it was a particular Method of Rejoicing he had heard of, but never ſeen; wherein, if the King goes in Triumph, all the People of *Brandleguarp*, from fifteen to ſixty, are obliged to attend him with Sweecoes. He ſaid, it was reported amongſt them, that in *Begſurbeck*'s time there were two of them, but there had been none ſince.

When we met them, I perceived they had opened into two Lines or Ranks of a prodigious Length; at the further End of which, was the King with innumerable Lights about him; the whole looked like a prodigious Avenue or Viſto of Lights, bounded at the further End where the King was, with a Pyramid of Light. This had the moſt ſolemn and magnificent Effect on the Eye, that any thing of Light could poſſibly have; but as we paſſed thro' the Ranks, each of the Spectators having two Lights, one was given to each Soldier of the whole Army. And then to look backward, as well as forward, the Beauty of the Scene was inexpreſſible. We marched all the way amidſt the Shouts of People, and the Sound of the Gripſacks, going very ſlowly between the Ranks; and at length arriving at the

Pyramid,

Pyramid, where the King was; I heard abundance of ſweet Voices, chaunting my Actions in triumphal Songs: But I could take little Notice of theſe, or of my Son with his Flagellet amongſt them, for the extravagant Appearance of the Pyramid, which ſeem'd to reach the very Sky. For firſt, there was a long Line of a full half Mile, which hovered at even Height with the two ſide Ranks; in the Center of that, and over it, was the King ſingle; over him, another Line, ſhorter than the firſt, and again over that, ſhorter and ſhorter Lines; till at a prodigious Height, it ended in one ſingle Light. Theſe all hovering, kept their Stations; while the King darted a little Space forward to meet me, and congratulate my Succeſs; then turning, and preceding me, the whole Pyramid turned, and marched before us; ſinging all the way to the City; the Pyramid changing ſeveral times into divers Forms, as into Squares, Half-moons, with the Horns ſometimes erect, and again reverſed, and various other Figures; and yet amongſt this infinite Number of Globes, there was not the leaſt glaring or offenſive Light; but only what was agreeable to the People themſelves. As the Rear of the Army entred the Lines, they cloſed upon it, and followed us into *Brandleguarp*. While we paſſed the City to the Palace, the whole Body of People kept hovering, till the King and myſelf were alighted; and then every one alighted where he beſt

beſt could. All the Streets and Avenues to the Palace, were blocked up with People, crowding to receive the King's Beneficence; for he had proclaimed a Feaſt, and open Houſe-keeping to the People for ſix Days. The King, the *Colambs*, *Ragams*, and great Officers of State, with myſelf, had a magnificent Entertainment prepared us in *Begſurbeck*'s great Room; and his Majeſty after Supper, being very impatient to know how the Battle went, I told him, the only valourous Exploit was performed by my Friend *Naſgig*, who opened the way to Victory, by the Slaughter of *Harlokin*'s General. *Naſgig* then roſe, deſiring only that ſo much might be attributed to him, as Fortune had accidentally thrown into his Scale; for it might have been equally his Fate, as the General's, to have fallen; but except that Skirmiſh, ſays he, and ſome flying Cuts at the Van, we have had no Engagement at all; nor have we loſt a ſingle Man; *Peter* only ſitting in his Chair, and commanding Victory: He ſpake aloud but thrice, and whiſpered once to them; but ſo powerfully, that having at the two firſt Words laid above three hundred of the Enemy at their Lengths, and brought *Harlokin* to his Feet, with a Whiſper; at the third Word, he concluded the War. The whole time from the firſt Sight of the Enemy, to their total Defeat, took not up more ſpace than one might fairly ſpend in traverſing his Majeſty's Garden. In ſhort, Sir, ſays

ſays *Naſgig*, your Majeſty needs no other Defence againſt public or private Enemies as I can ſee, than *Peter*; and my Profeſſion, whilſt he is with us, can be of little Uſe to the State.

After theſe Compliments from *Naſgig*, and ſeparate ones from the King and the reſt; I told them, it was the higheſt Felicity to me, to be made an Inſtrument by the great Collwarr, in freeing ſo mighty a Kingdom, and conſiderable a People, from the Miſery of a tyrannical Power. You live, ſays I, ſo happily, under the mild Government of *Georigetti*, that it is ſhocking but to think into what a diſtreſſed State you muſt have fallen, under the Power of an Uſurper; who claiming all as his own by way of Conqueſt, would have reduced you to a miſerable Servitude. But, ſays I, there is, and I am ſorry to ſee it, ſtill amongſt you, an Evil that you great ones feel not; and yet it cries for Redreſs. Are we not all, from the King to the meaneſt Wretch amongſt us, formed with the ſame Members? do we not all breathe the ſame Air? inhabit the ſame Earth? are we not all ſubject to the ſame Diſorders? and do we not all feel Pain and Oppreſſion alike? have we not all the ſame Senſes, the ſame Faculties? and in ſhort, are we not all equally Creatures of, and Servants to the ſame Maſter, the great Collwarr? Would not the King have been a Slave, but for the Accident of being

ing

ing begotten by one who was a King? and would not the pooreſt Creature amongſt us have been the King, had he been ſo begotten? Did you great Men, by any ſuperior Merit before your Births, procure a Title to the high Stations in which you are plac'd? No, you did not. Therefore give me leave to tell you, what I would have done: As every Man has equal Right to the Protection of Collwarr, why when you have no Enemy to diſtreſs you, will you diſtreſs one another? Conſider, you great ones, and act upon this diſintereſted Principle; do to another, what you, in his place, would have him do to you; diſmiſs your Slaves, let all Men be what Collwarr made them, free. But if this unequal Diſtinction amongſt you, of Man and Man, is ſtill retained; though you are at preſent free from the late Diſaſter, it ſhall be ſucceeded with more and heavier. And now, that you may know I would not have every Man a Lord, or every one a Beggar; remember, I would only have every ſerving Man at Liberty to chuſe his own Maſter, and every Maſter his own Man: For he that has Property, and Benefits to beſtow, will never want Dependants, for the ſake of thoſe Benefits, to ſerve him; as he that has them not, muſt ſerve for the ſake of obtaining them. But then let it be done with Free-will; he that then ſerves you will have an Intereſt in it, and do it

for

for his own ſake with a willing Mind; and you, who are ſerved, will be tenderer and kinder to a good Servant, as knowing by a contrary Uſage you ſhall loſe him. I deſire this may now be declared to be ſo, or your Reaſons, if any there are, againſt it.

One of the Ragams ſaid, he thought I ſpoke what was very juſt, and would be highly acceptable to Collwarr.

Then two of the *Colambs* roſe to ſpeak together, and after a ſhort Compliment who ſhould begin; they both declared they only roſe to teſtify their Conſents.

The King referring it to me, and the *Colambs* conſenting; I ordered Freedom to be proclaimed thro' the City; ſo that every one appeared at their uſual Duties, to ſerve their own Maſters for a Month; and then to be at Liberty to come to freſh Agreement with them, or who elſe they pleaſed.

This, Sir, ſays I, to the King, will now be a Day of Joy indeed, to thoſe poor Hearts who would have been in no Fear of loſing before, let who would have reigned; for can any Man believe a Slave cares who is uppermoſt; he is but a Slave ſtill. But now, ſays I, thoſe who were ſo before may by Induſtry gain Property; and then their own Intereſt engages them to defend the State.

There

There is but one thing more I will trouble you with now; and that, ſays I, to the Ragams, is, that we all meet at the Mouch To-morrow, to render Collwarr Thanks for the late, and implore future, Favour. And this paſſed without any Contradiction.

When we met, the poor Ragams were at a great loſs for want of their Image, not knowing what to do or ſay. For their Practice had been, to proſtrate themſelves on the Ground, making ſeveral odd Geſtures; but whether they prayed or only ſeemed ſo to do, no one knew.

While the People were gathering, I called to a Ragam, ſeeing him out of Character; ſuppoſe, ſaid I, for I ſee you want your Image, you and your Brethren had received a Favour of the King, and you was deputed by them to thank him, you would ſcarce be at a loſs to expreſs your Gratitude to him, and tell him how highly you all eſteemed his Benefits, hoping you ſhould retain a juſt Senſe of them, and behave yourſelves as dutiful Subjects for the future; and then deſire him to keep you ſtill in his Protection. And this, ſays I, as you believe in ſuch a Being as Collwarr, who underſtands what you ſay, you may with equal Courage do to him; keeping but your Mind intent upon him, as if you ſaw him preſent. Indeed, ſays he, I believe you are right, we may ſo; but it is a new thing,

and you muſt excuſe us, if we do it not ſo well at firſt.

I found I had a very apt Scholar, for after he had begun, he made a moſt extraordinary Prayer in regular Order; the People ſtanding very attentive. It was not long, but he juſtly obſerved the Points I hinted to him.

When he had done, another and another went on, till we had heard ten of them, and in every one ſomething new, and very *a propos*; and ſeveral of them afterwards confeſſed, they never had the like Satisfaction in their Lives; for they had new Hearts, and new Thoughts, they ſaid.

We ſpent the ſix Day Feaſt in every Gayety imaginable, and eſpecially in Dancing, of which they were very fond in their way; but it was not ſo agreeable to me, as my own Country way, there being too much antick in it. New Deputies daily arrived from the revolted Towns; and ſeveral little Republicks, not claimed by *Georigetti* before, begged to be taken under his Protection: ſo that in one Week, the King ſaw himſelf not only releaſed from the Dread of being driven from his Throne, but courted by ſome, ſubmitted to by others, and almoſt at the Summit of Glory a Sovereign can attain to.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

A Viſitation of the revolted Provinces propoſed by Peter; *his new Name of the Country received; Religion ſettled in the Weſt; Slavery aboliſhed there;* Laſmeel *returns with* Peter; Peter *teaches him Letters; the King ſurprized at written Correſpondence;* Peter *deſcribes the Make of a Beaſt to the King.*

THE Feſtival being over, the *Colambs* begged Leave to depart; but the King, who now did nothing without me, conſulted with me, if it was yet proper. I told him, as things had ſo long been in Confuſion in the Weſt, that tho' the Provinces had made their Submiſſion, yet the Neceſſity of their Circumſtances, and the general Terror, might have cauſed them only to diſſemble, till their Affairs were compoſed again; and that as it was more than probable, ſome Relations of the deceaſed *Harlokin*, or other popular Perſon, might engage them again in another Revolt; I thought it would not be improper, to adviſe with his *Colambs* about the Eſtabliſhment of the preſent Tranquillity, and not by too great a Security give way to future Commotions; and as all the *Colambs* were then preſent, it might be proper to ſummons them once more.

When they were met, the King declared the more particular Satisfaction he took in that Meeting, than he had heretofore done, when they had been put to it for means to ſecure their Lives and Properties; for now, ſays he, our Deliberations muſt turn upon ſecuring our new Acquiſitions, and on ſettling thoſe Provinces, which till now have never fallen under my Power. But, ſays he, I ſhall refer it to *Peter* to propoſe to you what at preſent ſeems moſt neceſſary for you to conſider of; and that adjuſted, ſhall diſmiſs you.

I told them, that as the too ſudden healing of Wounds in the Body natural, before the Bottom was clean and uncorrupt, made them liable to break out again with greater Malignity; ſo Wounds in the Body political, if ſkinned over only, without probing and cleanſing the Source and Spring from whence they aroſe, would rankle and fret within, till a proper Opportunity; and then burſt forth again with redoubled Violence. I would therefore propoſe a Viſitation of the ſeveral Provinces; an Inquiry into their Conduct; an Examination into the Lives and Principles of the *Colambs*, the inferior Officers, and Magiſtrates; and either to retain the old, or appoint new, as there ſhould be Occaſion. This Viſitation I would have performed by his Majeſty, and ſo many of you the honourable *Colambs*, ſays I, as he ſhall ſee fit ſhould attend him in Royal State;

that his new Subjects may ſee his Majeſty, and hear his moſt gracious Words; and being ſenſible of his good Diſpoſition towards them, may be won by his Equity and Juſtice, to a zealous Submiſſion to his Government; which nothing but the Perception of their own Senſes can eſtabliſh in the Heart. This, I don't doubt, will anſwer the End I propoſe, and conſolidate the Peace and Happineſs of *Norm*, *Normus*, I muſt ſay *Doorpt Swangeanti*.

Hearing me heſitate at the Word *Normbdſgrſutt*, and call it *Doorpt Swangeanti*, the whole Aſſembly rang with *Doorpt Swangeanti*; and at laſt came to a Reſolution, that the Weſt being now united again to the Eaſt, the whole Dominions ſhould be called *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*, or the great Flight-Land.

They approved the Viſitation, and all offered to go with the King; but inſiſted I ſhould be of the Party: Which agreeing to do, I choſe me out two of the moſt knowing Ragams, to teach the new Religion amongſt them; for in every Project I had my View to advance Religion.

Some were for having the Deputies releaſed, and diſpatched with Notice of the King's Intentions; but I objecting, that they might diſreliſh their Confinement, and poſſibly raiſe Reports prejudicial to our Proceedings, it was thought better to take them with us, and go ourſelves as ſoon as poſſible.

We ſet out with a prodigious Retinue, firſt to the right, in order to ſweep round the whole Country, and take all the Towns in our way, and occaſionally enter the middle parts as the Towns lay commodious.

We were met by the Magiſtrates and chief Officers of each Diſtrict; at ſome diſtance from each City, with Strings about their Necks, and the Craſhoe Inſtrument borne before them in much Humility. His Majeſty ſaid but little to them on the way; but ordered them to precede him to the City, and conduct him to the *Colamb*'s Houſe; when he was commanded to ſurrender his Imployment to his Majeſty; as did all the other Officers who held Poſts under him. Then an Examination was taken of their Lives, Characters, and Behaviour in their Stations; and finding moſt of them had behaved well to the Government they had lived under, (for their Plea was, they had found things under an Uſurpation, and being ſo, that Government was natural to them, having ſingly no Power to alter it;) upon their perfect Submiſſion to the King, and ſolemn Engagement to advance and maintain his Right, they received their Commiſſions anew from his Majeſty's own Mouth. But where any one had been cruel or oppreſſive to the Subjects, or committed any notorious Crime or Breach of Truſt, for the meaneſt Perſons had Liberty to complain, he was rejected,

rejected, and for the moſt part ſent to *Craſhdoorpt*, to prevent the ill Effects of his Diſgrace.

We having diſplaced but five *Colambs*, and a few inferior Officers; the Moderation and Juſtice of our Proceedings gave the utmoſt Satisfaction both to the Magiſtrates and People.

Having obſerved at *Brandleguarp* abundance of the ſmall Images my Wife had ſpoken of, and thinking this a proper Opportunity to ſhew my Reſentment againſt them; I ordered ſeveral of the Ragams of the Weſt before me, and aſked what ſmall Images they had amongſt them. One, who ſpoke for the reſt, told me, very few he believed; for he had ſcarce had any brought to him to be bleſſed. Where, ſays I, is your great Image? he told me at *Youk*. And have not the People here many ſmall ones? Very few, ſays he, for they have not been forced upon us long. How forced upon you, ſays I, don't the People worſhip them? A ſmall number now do, ſays he. Pray ſpeak out, ſays I, when might you not worſhip them? Never, that I know of, ſays he, in our State, till about ten Years ago, when *Harlokin* obliged us to it. What, did you not worſhip them before, ſays I? No, ſays he, never ſince it has been a ſeparate Kingdom; for we would follow the old Ragam's Advice of worſhipping Collwarr; which they not admitting of, the State was divided between us who would, and they who would not come into the Ragam's Doctrine;

and tho' *Harlokin* was a zealous Image-Worſhipper, yet all he could do would not bring the People heartily into it; for Collwarr never wanted a great Majority. This pleaſed me prodigiouſly, being what was never hinted to me before; and I reſolved not to let my Scheme be a loſer by it.

As we were to viſit *Youk* in about eight Days, I ſummoned the Ragams and People to meet at the Mouch: There recounting the great things done by Collwarr in all Nations; this I could make appear, ſays I, by many Examples; but as you have one even at your own Towns, I need go no farther.

I muſt begin in ancient times, when I preſume you all worſhipped an Idol; have you any Tradition before this? They ſaid, no. This Image, ſays I, was worſhipped in *Begſurbeck*'s Days, when an old Ragam, whoſe Mind Collwarr had enlightned with the Truth, would have withdrawn your Reverence from the Image, to the original Collwarr himſelf; you would not conſent; he threatens you, but promiſes Succeſs to *Begſurbeck*, who did conſent; and he had it to an old Age. Then thoſe who would alſo conſent; were ſo far encouraged, as to be able to form an independant Kingdom. Could no body yet ſee the Cauſe? Was it not apparent Collwarr was angry with the Eaſt, that would not follow the old Ragam, and cheriſhed the Weſt who would?

But

But to be ſhort, let us apply the preſent Inſtance, and ſure it will convince us, who is right who wrong.

So long as the Weſt followed Collwarr, they flouriſhed, and the Eaſt declined; but no ſooner had the Weſt degenerated under the Command of *Harlokin*, and the Eaſt by my means had embraced Collwarr, but the Tables were turned; the Eaſt is found weighty, and the Weſt kicks the Beam. Theſe things whoſo ſees not, is blind indeed. Therefore let Publication be made, for the Deſtruction of all ſmall Images; and let the Harbourers of them, contrary to this Order, be ſlit: And for myſelf, I'll deſtroy this Mother-Monſter; take you, holy Ragams, care to deſtroy the Brood: And having ſaid this, I hacked the new Idol to pieces.

I ordered Proclamation for aboliſhing Slavery, under the Reſtrictions uſed at *Brandleguarp*; and thus having compoſed the Weſt, and given a general Satisfaction, we returned; almoſt the whole Weſt accompanying us, till the Eaſt received us; and never was ſo happy a Union, or more preſent to teſtify it, ſince the Creation, I believe.

I ordered ſeveral of the principal Mens Sons to Court, in order for Imployments, and to furniſh out future *Colambs*; and this I did, as knowing each Country will rather approve of a Member of their own Body for their Head, than a Stranger;

and in my Opinion, it is the moſt natural Union. And then breeding them under the Eye of the King eight or ten Years or more, they are as it were naturalized to him too, and in better Capacity to ſerve both King and Country.

As my Head was conſtantly at work for the Good of this People, I turned the moſt trifling Incidents into ſome uſe or other; and made the narroweſt Proſpects extend to the vaſteſt Diſtances. I ſhall here Inſtance in one only. There was at *Youk* a private Man's Son, who by mere Accident I happened to aſk ſome ſlight Queſtion; and he giving me, with a profound Reſpect and graceful Aſſurance, a moſt pertinent Anſwer; that, and the manner of its Delivery, gave me a Pleaſure, which upon further Diſcourſe with him, was, contrary to Cuſtom, very much increaſed; for I found in him an extenſive Genius, and a Deſire for my Converſation. I deſired his Father to put him under my Care, which the old Man, as I was then in ſo great Repute, readily agreed to; and his Son deſiring nothing more, I took him with me to *Brandleguarp*. I ſoon procured him a pretty Poſt of but ſmall Duty, for I had purpoſed other Imployment for him, but of ſufficient Significancy to procure him Reſpect. I took great Delight in talking with him on different Subjects, and obſerved by his Queſtions upon them, which often puzzled me, or his Anſwers

to

to them, that he had a moſt pregnant Fancy and ſurprizing Solidity, joined to a continual and unweary'd Application. I frequently mentioning Books, Writing, and Letters to him, and telling him what great things might be attained that way; his inquiſitive Temper, and the Schemes he had formed thereon, put me upon thinking of ſeveral things I ſhould never have hit upon without him. I conſidered all the ways I could contrive, to teach him Letters; and letting him into my Deſign, he aſked me how I did to make a Letter. I deſcribed a Pen to him, and told him I put a black Liquor into it, and as I drew that along upon a flat white thing we made uſe of, called Paper, it would make Marks which way ever I drew it, into what ſhape I pleaſed. Why then, ſays he, any thing that will make a Mark upon another thing as I pleaſe, will do. True, ſays I, but what ſhall we get that will make a black Mark? We were entring further into this Debate; but the King ſending for me, I left him unſatisfied. I ſtayed late with the King that Night, ſo did not ſee *Laſmeel*, for that was his Name, till next Night, wondring what was become of him. I aſked him then, where he had been all the Day? He told me, he had been looking for a Pen and Paper. I laughed, and aſked him if he had found them? Yes, ſays he, or ſomething that will do as well: So he opened one Side of his Graundee, and ſhewed me a large flat

Leaf,

Leaf, ſmooth and pulpy, very long and wide, and about a Quarter of an Inch thick, almoſt like an *Indian* Fig-leaf. And what am I to do with this, ſays I? To mark it, ſays he, and ſee where you mark. With what, ſays I? With this, ſays he, putting his Hand again into his Graundee, and taking out three or four ſtrong, ſharp Prickles. I looked at them both, and clapping him on the Head, *Laſmeel*, ſays I, if you and I were in *England*, you ſhould be made a Privy-Counſellor. What, won't it do then, ſays he? I told him we'd try. I thought, ſays he, it would have done very well; for I marked one all about, and tho' I could not ſee much at firſt, by that time I had made an End, that I did firſt, was quite of a different Colour from the Leaf, and I could ſee it as plain as could be. I told him, as he was of an Age to comprehend what I meant, I would take another Method with him than with a Child; ſo I reaſoned from Sentences, backwards to Words, and from them to Syllables, and ſo to Letters. I then made one, the Vowel A, told him its Sound, and added a Conſonant to it, and told him, that part of the Sound of each diſtinct Letter put together, as the two Letters themſelves were, made another Sound, which I called a Syllable; and that joining two or more of them together made a Word, by putting the ſame Letters together as made the Sounds of thoſe Syllables which made that Word. Then ſetting him

him a Copy of Letters, which with very little Difficulty were to be drawn upon the Leaf, and telling him their Sounds, I left him to himſelf; and when he had done, tho' I named them but twice over, his Memory was ſo ſtrong as to retain the Sounds, as he called them, of every one, but F, L, and Q.

In two Months time, I made him Maſter of any thing I wrote to him; and, as he delighted in it, he wrote a great deal himſelf; ſo that we kept an epiſtolary Correſpondence, and he would ſet down all the common Occurrences of the Day, as what he heard and ſaw, with his Remarks on divers things.

One Day, as the King and I were walking in the Gardens, and talking of the Cuſtoms of my Country, and about our Wars; telling him, how our Soldiers fought on Horſe-back; the King could not conceive what I meant by an Horſe. I told him, my Wife had ſaid there were neither Beaſts or Fiſhes in her Country; which I was very much ſurprized at, conſidering how we abounded with both; and therefore, ſays I, to tell your Majeſty, that an Horſe is a Creature with four Legs; you muſt naturally believe it to be ſomewhat like a Man with four Legs. Why truly, ſays he, I believe it is; but has it the Graundee? I could not forbear ſmiling, even at Majeſty; and wanted to find ſome Similitude to compare it to, to carry the King's Mind that way;

way; for elſe he would ſooner, I thought, conceive it like a Tree or a Mountain, than what it really was; and as I was muſing, it came into my Head, I had given *Laſmeel* a ſmall Print of an Horſe, which I found in one of the Captain's Pockets at *Grandevolet*, and believing it to be the Stamp of a Tobacco-paper, had kept it to pleaſe the Children with; ſo I told the King, I believed I could ſhew him the Figure of an Horſe. He told me, it would much oblige him.

Seeing ſeveral of the Guards waiting at the Garden-Arch; I looked, and at laſt found one of *Laſmeel*'s Leaves in the Garden; and cutting one of them up with my Knife, I took the Point of that, and wrote to *Laſmeel*, to ſend me by the Bearer the Picture of an Horſe I gave him, that I might ſhew it the King. And calling one of the Guards, carry that to *Laſmeel*, ſays I, he is, I believe, in my Appartment, and bring me an Anſwer directly. Then falling into Diſcourſe again with the King; and preſently turning at the End of the Walk, I ſaw the ſame Guard again. Says I, you can't have brought me an Anſwer already. You have not told me, ſays he, what to bring you an Anſwer to. Nor ſhall I, ſays I; do as you are bid; for I perceived then what the Fellow ſtuck at. He walked off with the Leaf, but very diſcontentedly. The King ſaid, he wondred how I could act ſuch a Contradiction. This, Father, ſays he, is not what I

expected

expected from you; to order a Man to bring an Anſwer, without giving him a Meſſage. I deſired his Patience only till the Man came back. Preſently, ſays the King, here he comes. Well, ſays he, what Anſwer? Sir, ſays the Fellow, I have only had the Walk for my Pains; for he ſent it back again, and a little white thing with it. Ha, ha, ſays the King, I thought ſo; come Father, own you have once been in the wrong; for I am ſure you intended to give him a Meſſage, but having forgot it, would not ſubmit to be told of your Miſtake by a Guard. I looked very grave, reading what *Laſmeel* had wrote; which was to tell me he had obeyed my Orders, by ſending the Horſe; for he was juſt then drawing it out upon a Leaf.

Come, come, ſays the King, give the Man his Meſſage, Father, and let him go again. Sir, ſays I, there is no need of that; he has punctually obeyed me, and *Laſmeel* was then at the Table in my oval Chamber with a Leaf, and this Picture, in my Hand, before him.

The King was ready to ſink when I ſaid ſo, and ſhewed the Print. Truly Father, ſays he, I have been to blame to queſtion you; for tho' theſe things are above my Comprehenſion, I am not to think any thing beyond your Skill. I made no Reply to it, but ſhewing the King the Picture, the Guard ſneaked off, and glad he was, I believe, he could do ſo.

I went then upon the Explanation of my Horſe, and anſwering fifty Queſtions about him; at laſt, he aſked what his Inſide was; exactly the ſame as your Majeſty's, ſaid I. And can he eat and breathe too, ſays he? juſt as you can, ſays I. Well, ſays he, I ſhould never have believed there had been ſuch a Creature; what would I give for one of them. I ſet forth the divers other Uſes we put them to, beſides the Wars; and by the Picture, with ſome ſuppoſed Alterations, I deſcribed a Cow, a Sheep, and numberleſs other Quadrupedes; my Account of which, gave him great Pleaſure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Peter *ſends for his Family*; *a riſing of former Slaves on that Account*; *takes a View of the City*; *Deſcription of it, and of the Country*; *hot and cold Springs.*

HAVING now ſome leiſure-time on my Hands to conſider over my own Affairs; I had Thoughts of tranſporting my Family, with all my Effects, to *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*; but yet, had no mind to relinquiſh all Thought of my Ship and Cargoe; for the greateſt part of this, was ſtill remaining; I having had but the Pickings thro' the Gulph. I had once a mind to have gone myſelf, but conſidering the immenſe Diſtance over Sea, though I had once come ſafe, I thought I ought not to tempt Providence, where my Preſence was not abſolutely neceſſary.

Naſgig, to whoſe Care and Conduct any Enterprize might be truſted, offered his Service to go, and execute any Commands I ſhould give him. His only Difficulty, he ſaid, was, that it would be impoſſible for him to remember the different Names of many things, which he had no Idea of to convey the Knowledge of them to his Mind when he ſaw them; but barring that, he doubted not to give me Satisfaction. I told him, I would ſend an Aſſiſtant with him, who

who could remember whatever I once told him; and that I might not burthen his Memory with Names only, *Laſmeel* ſhould carry his Memory with him; and that he [*Naſgig*], ſhould only have the executive part.

Laſmeel, who had ſat waiting an Opportunity to put in for a Share in the Adventure; having a longing Deſire to ſee the Ship, told *Naſgig*, he had a peculiar Art of Memory, ſo as to remember whatever he would as long as he pleaſed; and that if he carried that with him, they need fear no Miſtakes.

The King having granted me as many of his Guards as I pleaſed, for the Carriage of my things, we appointed them to be ready on the fourth Day, when *Naſgig* and *Laſmeel* ſet out with them.

I ordered *Laſmeel* however to be with me the next Morning, that we might ſet down proper Inſtructions; which I told him would be very long; and that he muſt bring a good Number of Leaves with him.

When *Laſmeel* entred my Chamber next Morning, he informed me, that the whole City was in an Uproar, eſpecially thoſe who had been freed by me. What? ſays I, have they ſo ſoon forgot their Subjection, to miſapply their Liberty already? But ſtep and bring me word what's the matter, and order ſome of the Ringleaders hither to me.

Laſmeel

Laſmeel upon Inquiry found, that it had been given out I was going to leave the Country, and they all ſaid wherever I went, they were determined to go and ſettle with me; for if I left them, they ſhould be reduced to Slavery again. However, he brought ſome of them to me, and upon my telling them I thanked them for their Affection to me, but blamed them for ſhewing it in ſo tumultuous a manner; and that I was ſo far from intending to leave them, that I was ſending for my Family and Effects, in order to ſettle amongſt them; they rejoiced very much, and told me they would carry the good News to their Companions, and diſperſe immediately: But I was now in more Perplexity than before, for they having ſignified my Deſigns to the reſt, they ruſhed into the Gallery in ſuch Numbers, that they forced up to my very Chamber. I told them, this was an unprecedented manner of uſing a Perſon they pretended a Kindneſs for; and told them, if they made uſe of ſuch Riſings to expreſs their Gratitude to me, it would be the direct means to oblige me to leave them: For, ſays I, do you think I can be ſafe in a Kingdom, where greater Deference is paid to me, than to the Crown? They begged my Pardon they ſaid, and would obey me in any thing; but the preſent Trouble was, only to offer their Services to fetch my Family and Goods, or to do any thing elſe I ſhould want them for; and if I would favour them

them in that, they would retire directly. I told them, when I had conſidered of it, they ſhould hear from me; and this again quieted them.

This Diſturbance not only took up much of my time, which I could have better imployed; but put me to a Nonplus, how to come off with them; till I ſent *Maleck* to tell them, tho' I ſet a great Value upon their Eſteem, yet, after what had paſſed, it would be the moſt unadviſable thing in Nature for me to accept their Kindneſs; for having before requeſted a Body of Men of the King, as he had graciouſly granted them, it would be preferring them to the King, ſhould I now relinquiſh his Grant, and make uſe of their Offer; and after this I heard no more of it.

I had ſcarce met with a more difficult Taſk, than to fix exact Rules for the Conduct of my preſent Undertaking; there being ſo many things to be expreſſed, wherein the leaſt Perplexity ariſing, might have cauſed both Delay and Damage. For I was not only forced to ſet down the things I would have brought, but the Manner and Method of packing and ſecuring them; but, as *Laſmeel* could read my Writing, to *Pedro* at home, and *Youwarkee* on board, it would be a means, tho' far from an expeditious one, of bringing Matters into ſome Order: And after I had done, as I thought, I could have enumerated many more things, and was obliged to add an *et cetera* to the End of my Catalogue; and while

they

they were ready for flight, I added divers other Particulars and Circumſtances. Nay, when they were even upon the Graundee, I recollected the moſt material thing of all; for my greateſt concern was, having broke up ſo many of my Cheſts, to find Package for the things; I ſay, even ſo late as that, I bethought me of the ſeveral great Water-caſks I had on board, that would hold an infinite number of ſmall things, and would be ſlung eaſily; ſo I ſtopped them, and ſet down that; and they were no ſooner out of Sight and Hearing, but remembering twenty more, I was then forced to truſt them to my *et cetera*.

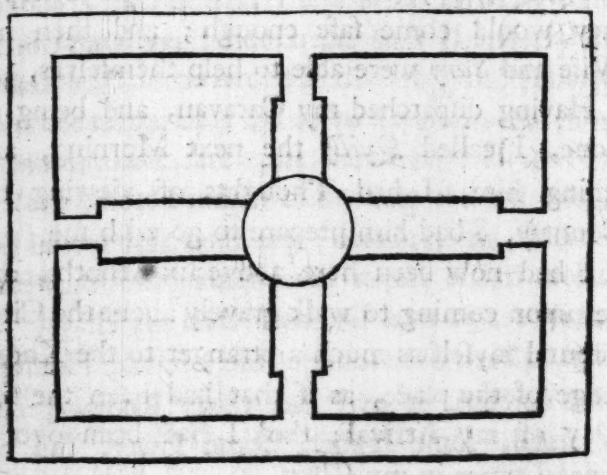
I had ſent my own flying Chair to bring the Boys, who had not the Graundee; with Orders for *Pedro* to ſit tied in the Chair, with *Dicky* tied in his Arms; *Jemmy* to ſit tied to the Board before the Chair, and *David* behind; ſo I hoped they would come ſafe enough; and then my Wife and *Sary* were able to help themſelves.

Having diſpatched my Caravan, and being all alone, I called *Quilly* the next Morning, and telling him, I had Thoughts of viewing the Country, I bad him prepare to go with me.

I had now been here above ſix Months, and yet upon coming to walk gravely about the City; I found myſelf as much a Stranger to the Knowledge of the place, as if that had been the firſt Day of my Arrival; tho' I had been over it ſeveral times in my Chair.

This

This City is not only one of, but actually the moſt curious Piece of Work in the World, and conſiſts of one immenſe entire Stone of a conſiderable Height, and it may be ſeven Miles in Length, and near as broad as it is long. The Streets and habitable part of it, are ſcooped as it were out of the ſolid Stone, to the Level with the reſt of the Country, very flat and ſmooth at Bottom, the Rock riſing perpendicular from the Streets on each Side. The Figure of the City is a direct Square; each Side about ſix Miles long, with a large open Circle in the Center of the Square, about a Mile in Diamater; and from each of the Sides of the outer Streets to the oppoſite Side, runs another Street, cutting the Center of the Circle as in the Figure.



Along

Along the whole Face of the Rock, bounding the Streets and the Circle; there are Arch-ways: Thoſe in the Circle, and the four croſs Streets, for the Gentry and better People; and thoſe in the outer Streets, for the meaner; and it is as eaſy to know as by a Sign, where a great Man lives, by the Grandeur of his Entrance, and laviſh Diſtribution of the Pillars, Carving, and Statues about his Portico, within and without: For as they have no Doors, you may look in, and are not forbid Entrance; and tho' it ſhould look odd to an *Engliſh* Reader, that an *Engliſh* Man ſhould ſpeak with Pleaſure of a Land of Darkneſs, as that almoſt was; yet I am ſatisfied, whoever ſhall ſee it after me will be perſuaded, that for the real Grandeur of their Entrances, and for the Magnificence of the Apartments and Sculpture, no Part of the Univerſe can produce the like; and tho' within Doors there is no other manner of Light than the Sweecoes, yet that, when you are once uſed to it, is ſo agreeable and free from all noiſome Savour, that I never once regreted the loſs of the Sun within Doors, tho' I often have when abroad; but then that would be injurious to the proper Inhabitants; tho' they can no more ſee in total Darkneſs than myſelf.

I have been over ſome of theſe private Houſes, which contain, it may be, thirty Rooms great and ſmall, ſome higher, ſome lower, full of Sweecoe-

Sweecoe-lights, and extremely well proportioned and beautiful.

The King's Palace, with all the Apartments, ſtands in, and takes up, one full fourth-part of the Square of the whole City, and is indeed of itſelf a perfect City.

There is no great Man's Houſe without one or more long Galleries, for the Ladies to divert themſelves at divers Sports in; particularly at one like our Bowls on a Bowling-green, and at ſomewhat like nine Holes; at which they play for Wines, and drink a great deal, for none of them will intoxicate.

In my Walk and Survey of the City, one of the *Colambs* being making a Houſe to reſide in when at *Brandleguarp*, I had the Curioſity to go in. I ſaw there abundance of Botts ſtand filled with a greeniſh Liquor, and aſked *Quilly* what that was; he ſaid, it was what the Stone-Men uſed in making the Houſes. I proceeded further in, where I ſaw ſeveral Men at work, and ſtayed a good while to obſerve them. Each Man had a Bott of this Liquor in his Left-hand, and ſtood before a large Bank of Stone, it may be thirty Feet high, reaching forward up to the Cieling of the place, and aſcending by Steps from Bottom to Top; the Workmen ſtanding ſome on one Step, ſome on another, pouring on this Liquor with their Left-hands, and with their Right holding a wooden Tool, ſhaped like a little Spadle.

Spadle; I obſerved wherever they poured on this Water, a Smoak aroſe for a little ſpace of time; and then the place turned white, which was ſcraped off like fine Powder with the Spadle-hand; and then pouring new Liquor, he ſcraped again, working all the while by Sweecoe-lights.

Having my Watch in my Pocket, I meaſured a Spot of a Yard long, about a Foot high, and a Foot and half on the upper Flat, to ſee how long he would be fetching down that Piece; and he got it away in little above two Hours. By this means I came to know how they made their Houſes; for I had neither ſeen any Tool I thought proper, or even Iron itſelf, except my own, ſince I came into the Country. Upon Inquiry, I found that the Scrapings of this Stone, and a Portion of common Earth, mixed with a Water they have, will cement like Plaſter; and they uſe it in the ſmall ornamental Work of their Buildings. I then went further into this Houſe, where I ſaw one making the Figure of a Glumm by the ſame Method; but it ſtanding upright in the ſolid Rock againſt the Wall, the Workman held his Liquor in an open Shell, and dipping ſuch Stuff as my Bed was made of, bound up in ſhort Rolls, ſome larger, ſome leſs, into the Liquor, he touched the Figure, and then ſcraped till he had reduced it into a perfect Piece.

'Tis impoſſible to imagine how this Work rids away; for in ten Months time after I ſaw it, this Houſe was compleated, having a great Number of fine, large, and lofty Rooms in it; exquiſitely carved to all Appearance.

My Wonder ceaſed as to the Palace, when I ſaw how eaſily this Work was done; but ſure there is no other ſuch Room in the World as *Begſurbeck*'s, that I deſcribed above.

The Palace, as I ſaid before, taking up one Quarter of the City, opens into four Streets by four different Arches; and before one of the Sides, which I call the Front, is a large Triangle, formed by the Entrance out of one of the croſs Streets, and the two Ends of the Front of the Palace. Along the lower Front of it, all the way runs a Piazza of conſiderable Height, ſupported by vaſt round Columns, which ſeemed to bear up the whole Front of the Rock; over which was a Gallery of equal Length, with Balluſtrades along it, ſupported with Pillars of a yet finer Make; and over that a Pediment, with divers Figures, and other Work to the Top of the Rock; which being there quite even for its whole Length, was incloſed with Balluſtrades between Pedeſtals all the way; on which ſtood the Statues of their ancient Kings, ſo large as to appear equal to the Life. The other two Sides of the Triangle, were Dwellings for divers Officers belonging to the Palace. Under the middle Arch of the Piazza,

was the way into the Palace, thro' a long, ſpacious, arched Paſſage, whoſe further End opened into a large Square; on each Side of this Paſſage were large Stair-caſes, if I may ſo call them, by which you aſcend gradually, and without Steps, into the upper Apartments.

The next Morning we took another Walk, for I told *Quilly*, I had a mind to take a Proſpect of the Country; we then went out at the back Arch of the Palace, as we had the Day before at one of the Sides; there being a like Paſſage thro' the Rock from that we went out at, to an oppoſite Arch leading into the Garden. I ſay, we went out at the Back-arch, and after paſſing a large Quadrangle with Lodgings all round it, we aſcended thro' a cut in the Rock to a large Flat; where we plainly ſaw the black Mountain with its Top in the very Sky, the Sides of which afforded numberleſs Trees, tho' the Ground within view afforded very little Verdure, or even Shrubs. But the moſt beautiful Sight from the Rock was, to ſee the People come home loaded from the Mountain, and from the Woods, with, it may be, forty Pound weight each on their Backs; and mounting over the Rock, to ſee them dart along the Streets to their ſeveral Dwellings, over the Heads of thouſands of others walking in all parts of the Streets; whilſt others were flying other ways. It was very pleaſant to ſee a Man walking gravely in one Street, and as quick as Thought

to ſee him over the Rock, ſettled in another, perhaps two Miles diſtant.

The near view of the Country ſeeming ſo barren, naturally led me to aſk *Quilly*, from whence they got Proviſion for ſo many People as the City contained; which to be ſure, could not be leſs than three hundred thouſand. He told me, they had nothing but what came from the great Foreſt, or the Skirts of the Mountain. But for the Grain of it, and ſome few outward Marks, ſays I, I could have ſworn I had eaten ſome of my Country Beef the other Day at the King's Table. I don't know what your Beef, as you call it, is, but I am ſure we have nothing here, ſays he, but the Fruit of ſome Tree or Shrub, that ever I heard of. I wonder, ſays I, *Quilly*, how your Cooks dreſs their Victuals. I have eaten many things boiled, and otherwiſe dreſt hot; but have ſeen no Rivers or Water, ſince I came into this Country, except for drinking, or waſhing my Hands; and I don't know where that comes from. And another thing, ſays I, ſurprizes me; tho' I ſee no Sun as we have to warm the Air, you are very temperate in the Town, and it is ſeldom cold here; but I neither ſee Fire or Smoak. We have, ſays *Quilly*, ſeveral very good Springs under the Palace, both of hot Water and cold; and I don't know what we ſhould do with Fires; we ſee the Dread of them ſufficiently at Mount *Alkoe*. Our Cooks

dreſs

dreſs their Fruits at the hot Springs. That's a Fancy, ſays I, they can't boil them there. I'm ſure we have no other dreſſing, ſays he. Well, *Quilly*, ſays I, we'll go home now the way you told me of, and To-morrow you ſhall ſhow me the Springs; but pray, how come you to be ſo much afraid of Mount *Alkoe?* I ſuppoſe your Eyes won't bear the Light, is not that all? No, no, ſays *Quilly*, that is the Country of bad Men; ſome of us have flown over there accidentally, when the Mountain has been cool, as it is ſometimes for a good while together; and have heard ſuch Noiſes, as would frighten any honeſt Man out of his Senſes; for there they beat and puniſh bad Men. I could not make much of his Story, nor did I inquire further; for I had before determined if poſſible, to get over thither. As we were now come into the Garden, I ordered *Quilly* to get ready my Dinner, and I would come in preſently.

We went next Morning to view the Springs, and indeed it was a Sight well worth conſidering; we were in divers Offices under the Rock, (*Quilly* carrying two Globe-lights before me) in which were Springs of very clear Water, ſome of hot, and ſome of cold; riſing within two or three Inches of the Surface of the Floor. We then went into the Kitchen, which was bigger than I ever ſaw one of our Churches; and where were a great number of theſe Springs, the hot all boil-

ing full Speed Day and Night, and ſmoaking like a Caldron, the Water riſing thro' very ſmall Chinks in the Stone into Baſons, ſome bigger, ſome leſs; and they had ſeveral deep Stone-jars to ſet any thing to boil in. But what was the moſt ſurprizing was, you ſhould ſee a Spring of very cold Water, within a few Feet of one of hot, and they never riſe higher, or ſink lower than where they are. I talked with the Maſter-Cook, an ingenious Man, about them; and he told me, they lie in this manner all over the rocky Part of the Country; and that the firſt thing any one does in looking out for an Houſe is, to ſee for the Water, whether both hot and cold may be found within the Compaſs he deſigns to make uſe of, and finding that, he goes on, or elſe ſearches another place. And he told me, where this Convenience was not in great Plenty, the People did not inhabit; which made the Towns all ſo very populous. He ſaid too, that thoſe warm Springs made the Air more wholeſome about the Towns, than in other parts where there were none of them. I thanked him for his Information, which finiſhed my Search for that time.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Peter *ſends for his Family*; Pendlehamby *gives a fabulous Account of the Peopling of that Country; their Policy and Government*; Peter's *Diſcourſe on Trade*; Youwarkee *arrives*; *invites the King and Nobles to a Treat*; *ſends to* Grandevolet *for Fowls.*

THE Days hanging heavy on my Hands till the Arrival of my Family; I ſent *Pendlehamby* word, that as I had ſent for my Family and Effects in order to ſettle in this Country, and expected them very ſoon; I ſhould be glad of his, my Brother and Siſter's Company, to welcome them on their Arrival.

My Father came alone, which gave me an Opportunity of informing myſelf in the Riſe and Policy of the State; as I purpoſed to take ſeveral further Steps in their Affairs, if they might prove agreeable and conſiſtent: For hitherto having had only ſlight Sketches or Hints of things, I could form no juſt Idea of the whole of their Laws, Cuſtoms, and Government. Explaining myſelf therefore to him, I begged his Inſtruction in thoſe Particulars.

Son *Peter*, ſays my Father, you have already done too much in a ſhort time, to leave any Room to think you can do no more; and as you

have hitherto directed your own Proceedings with ſuch incredible Succeſs, neither the King or *Coſambs* will interpoſe againſt your Inclination, but give you all the Advices in our Powers; and I ſhall eſteem your ſelecting me for that Purpoſe, no ſmall Honour.

Know then, that this State, by the Tradition of our Ragams, has ſubſiſted eleven thouſand Years; for before that time, the great Mountain *Emina*, then not far from the black Mountain, but now fallen and ſunk in the Sea, roaring and raging in its own Bowels for many Ages; at laſt burſt aſunder with great Violence, and threw up numberleſs unformed fleſhy Maſſes to the very Stars; two of which, happening in their Paſſage to touch the Side of the black Mountain, for all the reſt fell into the Sea and were loſt, lodged there, and lying cloſe together as they grew, united to each other, till they were joined in one; and in proceſs of time, by the Dews of Heaven, became a Glumm and a Gawrey; but being ſo linked together by the Adheſion of their Fleſh, they were obliged both to move which way either would; living thus a long time in great Love and Fondneſs for each other, they had but one Inclination, leſt both ſhould be Sufferers upon the leaſt Diſagreement.

In proceſs of time, they grew tired of each others conſtant Society, and one willing to go here, and the other there, bred perpetual Diſorders

orders between them; for Prevention whereof for the future, they agreed to cut themſelves aſunder with ſharp Stones. The Pain indeed was intolerable during the Operation, but however they effected it; and the Wounds each received were very dangerous, and a long time before they were perfectly healed; but at length, ſometimes agreeing, ſometimes not, they begat a Son, whom they called *Perigenæ*, and a Daughter they called *Philella*. Theſe two as they grew up, deſpiſing their Parents who lived on the Top of the Mountain, ventured to deſcend into the Plains, and living upon the Fruits they found there, ſheltered themſelves in this very Rock. Mean time, the old Glumm and Gawrey, having lived to a great Age, were ſo infirm, that neither of them was able to walk for a long time; till one Day, being near each other, and trying to riſe by the Aſſiſtance of each other, they both got up, and leaning upon, and ſupporting each other, they alſo walked commodiouſly; this mutual Aſſiſtance kept them in good Humour a great while, till one Day, paſſing along near Hoximo, they both fell in.

Perigenæ and *Philella* had ſeveral Children in the Plains; who as they grew up, increaſing, ſpread into remote Parts and peopled the Country; at laſt one of them, being a very p: ſſionate Man, at the Inſtigation of his Wife, became the firſt Murtherer by ſlaying his Father. This ſo en-

raged the People, that the Murtherer and his Wife, in Abhorrence of the Fact, were conveyed to Mount *Alkoe*, where was then only a very narrow deep Pit, into which they were both thrown head-long; but the Perſons who carried them thither, had ſcarce retired from the Mouth of the Pit, when it burſt out with Fire, raging prodigiouſly, and has kept burning ever ſince. *Arco* and *Telamine*, the Mutherer and his Wife, lived ſeven thouſand Years in the Flames; till having with their Teeth wrought a Paſſage thro' the Side of the Mountain, they begat a new Generation about the Foot of the Mountain; and having brought Fire with them, reſolved to keep it burning ever after in Memory of their Eſcape; and Power being given them over bad Men, they and their Progeny are now wholly imployed in beating and tormenting them.

A great while after *Arco* and *Telamine* were thus diſpoſed of, the People of this Country multiplying, it happened one Year, that all the Fruits were ſo dry, that the People not able to live any longer upon the Moiſture of them only, as they had always done before, and fearing all to be conſumed with Drought, one of their Ragams praying very much, and promiſing to make an Image to Collwarr, and preſerve it for ever, if he would ſend them but Moiſture; in one Night's time, the Earth caſt up ſuch a Flood, that they were forced to mount on the Rocks for fear of drowning.

drowning. But the next Day it all ſunk away again, except ſeveral little Bubbles which remained in many places for a long time, and the People lived only on the Moiſture they ſucked from the Stone where thoſe Bubbles ſettled, for many Years; for they found that the Water aroſe to the Height of the Surface, and no higher; and where they found moſt of thoſe Chinks and Bubbles, they ſettled and formed Cities; living altogether in Holes of the Rock: Till one *Lallio*, having found out the Art of crumbling the Rock to Duſt by a Liquor he got from the Trees, and working himſelf a noble Houſe in the Rock, in the place where our Palace now ſtands, he told them, if they would make him their King, they ſhould each have ſuch an Houſe as his own; to this they agreed, and then he diſcovered the Secret to them.

This *Lallio* directed the cutting out this whole City, divided the People into Colonies where the Waters were moſt plenty; and while half the People worked at the Streets and Houſes, the other half brought them Proviſions. In ſhort, he grew ſo powerful, that no one durſt diſpute his Commands; all which Authority he tranſmitted to his Succeſſors, who finding by the Increaſe of the People, and the many Diviſions of them, that they grew inſolent and ungovernable, they appointed a *Colamb* in every Province, as a Vice-king, with abſolute Authority over all Cauſes,

Cauſes, except Murther and Treaſon, which are referred to the King and *Colambs* in Moucheratt.

As we had no want but of Victuals and Habitations; the King, when he gave a Colambat, gave alſo all the Lands and the Fruits thereof, together with all the hot and cold Springs to the *Colamb*; who, again diſtributed Parcels to the great Officers under him; and they part of theirs, to the meaner Officers under them, for their Subſiſtance; with ſuch a number of the common People as was neceſſary, in reſpect to the Dignity of the Poſt each enjoyed; who for their Services, are fed by their Maſters.

In all caſes of War, the King lays before the Moucheratt the Number of his own Troops he deſigns to ſend; when each *Colamb's* Quota being ſettled at ſuch a Proportion of the whole, he forthwith ſends his Number from out of his own Laſks, and alſo from the ſeveral Officers under him: So that every Man, let the Number be ever ſo great, can be at the Rendezvous in very few Days.

We have but three Profeſſions, beſides the Ragams and Soldiery, amongſt us, and theſe are Cooks, Houſe-makers, and Pike-makers; of which, every *Colamb* has ſeveral among his Laſks; and theſe, upon the new Regulation, will be the only Gainers, as they may work where they pleaſe, and according to their Skill will be their Proviſion;

Proviſion; but how the poor Labourers will be the better for it, I can't ſee.

Dear Sir, ſays I, there are, you ſee, amongſt Laſks, ſome of ſuch Parts, that it is great Pity they ſhould be confined from ſhewing them; and my Meaning in giving Liberty is, in order for what is to follow, that is, for the Introduction of Arts amongſt you. Now, every Man who has natural Parts will exert them, when any Art is laid before him; and he will find ſo much Delight in making new Diſcoveries, that, did no Profit attend it, the Satisfaction of the Diſcovery to a prying Genius would compenſate the Pains: But, I propoſe a Profit alſo to the Artificer. Why? what Profit, ſays my Father, can ariſe, but Food, and perhaps a Servant of their own to provide it for them?

Sir, ſays I, the Man who has nothing to hope, loſes the uſe of one of his Faculties; and if I gueſs right, and you live ten Years longer, you ſhall ſee this State as much altered, as the Difference has been between a Laſk and a Tree he feeds on. You ſhall all be poſſeſſed of that, which will bring you Fruits from the Woods without a Laſk to fetch it. Thoſe who were before your Slaves, ſhall then take it as an Honour to be imployed by you; and at the ſame time, ſhall imploy others dependant on them; ſo as the great and ſmall ſhall be under mutual Obligations to each other, and both to the truly induſtrious

Artificer,

Artificer, and yet every one content only with what he merits.

Dear Son, ſays my Father, theſe will be glorious Days indeed! But, come, come, you have play'd a good part already; don't, by attempting what you can't maſter, eclipſe the Glory ſo juſtly due to you.

No, Sir, ſays I, nothing ſhall be attempted by me to my Diſhonour, for I ſhall ever remember my Friend *Glaulepzie*. Sir, ſays I, ſee here, ſhewing him my Watch; why this, ſays he, hung by my Daughter's Side at *Graundevolet*. It did ſo, ſays I, and pray what did you take it for? A Bot, ſays he. I thought ſo, ſays I, but as you aſked no Queſtions, I did not then force the Knowledge of it upon you. But put it to your Ear; he did ſo: what Noiſe is that, ſays he, is it alive? No, ſays I, it is not, but it is as ſignificant. If I aſk it what time of the Day it is, or how long I have been going from this place to that; I look but in its Face, and it tells me preſently.

My Father looking upon it a good while, and perceiving that the Minute-hand had got further than it was at firſt; was juſt dropping it out of his Hand, had I not caught it. Why, it is alive, ſays he, it moves. Sir, ſays I, if you had drop't it, you had done me an inexpreſſible Injury. O, ho, ſays he, I find now how you do your Wonders; it is ſomething you have ſhut up here that

aſſiſts

aſſiſts you, it is an evil Spirit. I laughing heartily, he was ſorry for what he had ſaid, believing he had ſhewn ſome Ignorance. No, Sir, ſays I, it is no Spirit, good or evil, but a Machine made by ſome of my Countrymen, to meaſure time with. I have heard, ſays he, of meaſuring an Abb, or the Ground, or a Rock; but never yet heard of meaſuring time. Why Sir, ſays I, don't you ſay three Days hence I will do ſo; or ſuch a one is three Years old? Is not that a meaſuring of time by ſo many Days or Years? Truly, ſays he, in one Senſe I think it is. Now Sir, ſays I, how do you meaſure a Day? Why, by riſing, and lying down, ſays he. But ſuppoſe I ſay, I will go now and come again, and have a particular time in my Head when I will return. How ſhall I do, to make you know that time? Why, that will be afterwards, another time, ſays he, or I can think how long it will be. But, ſays I, how can you make me know, when you think it will be. You muſt think too, ſays he. But then, ſays I, we may deceive each other by thinking differently. Now this will ſet us to rights; then I deſcribed the Figures to him, telling him, how many parts they divided the Day into, and that by looking on it, I could tell how many of ſuch parts were paſſed; and that if he went from me, and ſaid he would come one, or two, or three parts hence, I ſhould know when to expect him. I then ſhewed him the Wheels, and explained

plained where the Force lay, and why it went no faſter or ſlower, as well as I could; and from my Deſire of teaching, inſenſibly perfected myſelf more and more in it. So that beginning to have a little Idea of it, he wiſhed he had one; and, ſays he, will you teach all our People to make ſuch things? Then they would be diſregarded Sir, ſays I. 'Tis impoſſible, ſays he. I'll tell you Sir, how I mean, ſaid I. I can hereafter ſhew you an hundred things as uſeful as this; now if every body was to make theſe, how would other things be made? Beſides, if every body made them, no body would want them: And then what would any body get by them, beſides the pleaſing their own Fancy? But if only twenty Men make them in one Town, all the reſt muſt come to them; and they who make theſe, muſt go to one of twenty others, who make another thing that theſe Men want, and ſo on; by which means, every Man wanting ſomething he does not make, it will be the better for every Maker of every thing.

Son, ſays my Father, excuſe me; I am really aſhamed, now you have better informed me, I aſked ſo fooliſh a Queſtion. I told him, we had a Saying in my Country, that every thing is eaſy when it is known. I think, ſays he, a Man might find every thing in your Country.

Two Days after, my Wife and Daughter *Sally* came very early; but ſure no Joy could be greater than

than ours at Sight of each other. I embraced them both over and over, as did my Father; eſpecially *Sally*, who was a charming Child. They told me, I might expect every thing that Evening, for they left them alighting at the Height of *Battingdrigg*; for tho' they came out the laſt, yet the Body of the People with their Baggage, could not come ſo faſt as they did. And little *Sally* ſaid, we ſtayed and reſted ourſelves purely, Daddy, at *Battingdrigg*, before the Crowd came, but as ſoon as Mammy had ſeen all my Brothers ſafe, who came before the reſt, and kiſſed *Dicky*, we ſet out again.

About ſeven Hours after, arrived the ſecond Convoy from abroad, that ever entred that Country. I had too much to do with my Wife and Children that Night, to ſpare a Thought to my Cargoe; ſo I only ſet a Guard over them; for tho' I had now been married about ſixteen Years, *Youwarkee* was ever new to me.

I was now obliged to the King again, for ſome additional Conveniencies to my former Apartment; and the young ones were mightily pleaſed, to have ſo much more Room than we had at home, and to ſee the Sweecoes; but finding themſelves waited upon in ſo elegant a manner, and by ſo many Servants, for with our new Rooms, we had all the Servants belonging to them, they thought themſelves in a Paradice to

the

the Grotto; where all we wanted, we were forced to help ourſelves to.

The next Day, *Tommy* came to ſee us, the King having given him a very pretty Poſt, ſince the Death of *Yaccombourſe*; and *Hallycarnie*, with the Princeſs *Jahamel* her Miſtreſs, who was mightily pleaſed to ſee *Youwarkee* in her *Engliſh* Dreſs, and invited her and the Children to her Apartment.

It was but a few Months ſince my Wife ſaw the Children; yet ſhe ſcarce knew them, they were ſo altered; for the two Courtiers behaved with ſo much Politeneſs, that their Brothers and *Sally* looked but with an ill Eye upon them, finding all the fault, and dropping as many little invidious Expreſſions on them as poſſible. But I ſharply rebuked them: We were all made chiefly, I told them, to pleaſe our Maker; and that could be done only by the Goodneſs of the Heart; and if their Hearts were more pure, they were the beſt Children; but if they liked their Brother and Siſter's outward Behaviour better than their own, they might ſo far imitate them.

When we were ſettled in our new Apartment, I unpacked my Chairs and Table, and ſet out my Side-board, and made ſuch a Figure, as had never before been ſeen in that Part of the World. I wanted now ſome Shoes for *Pedro*, his own being almoſt paſt wear, for the young ones never had worn any, but could find none; till applying

to

to *Laſmeel*, and ſhewing him what I wanted, he pointed to one of the great Water-caſks; but as there were eleven of them, big and little, I knew not where to begin; till having invited the King and ſeveral of the Miniſters to dine with me, I was forced to look over my Goods for ſeveral other things I ſhould want.

In my Search, I found half a Ream of Paper, a Leather Ink-bottle, but no Ink in it, ſome Quills, and Books of Accounts, and ſeveral other things relative to Writing. This Prize gave me Courage to attempt the other Caſks; but I found little more that I immediately wanted. In the laſt Caſk were ſeveral Books, two of them Romances, ſix Volumes of *Engliſh* Plays, two of Devotion, the next were either *Spaniſh* or *Portugueſe*, and the laſt looked like a Bible; but juſt opening it, and taking it to be of the ſame Language, I put them all in again, thinking to divert myſelf with them ſome other time. I here found ſome more Paper, and ſo many Shoes, as when I had fellowed them, ſerved me as long as I ſtayed in the Country.

Having as I ſaid before, invited the King to eat with me, I was ſorry I had not ordered my Fowls to be brought; and *Youwarkee* ſaid, ſhe thought to have done it, but I had not wrote for them. I told her, I would ſend *Maleck* for ſome of them I was reſolved; for I ſhould pique myſelf, on giving the King a Diſh he had never before

fore taſted. So I called *Maleck*, telling him, he muſt take thirty Men with him to *Graundevolet*; and carry ſix empty Cheſts with you, ſays I, and put eight of my Fowls in each Cheſt, and bring them with all Expedition. Where do they lie, Sir, ſays he? You will find them at Rooſt, ſays I, when it is dark. I never was there, ſays he, and don't know the way. What, ſays I, never at *Graundevolet?* Yes, ſays he, but not at Rooſt. I laughed, ſaying, *Maleck*, did not you ſee Fowls when you was there? He ſaid, he did not know, what were they like? They are a Bird, ſays I. And what ſort of a thing is that, ſays he? *Youwee* hearing us in this Debate, *Maleck*, ſays ſhe, did not you ſee me toſs down little Nuts to ſomething that you ſtared at, you ſaw them eat the Nuts. O dear, ſays he, I know it very well, with two Legs and no Arms. The ſame, ſays I, *Maleck*; do you go look for a little Houſe almoſt by my Grotto, and at Night you will find theſe things ſtand on Sticks in that houſe. Take them down gently, and come away with them in the Cheſts. *Maleck* performed his Buſineſs to a Hair, but inſtead of forty-eight, brought me ſixty, telling me, he found the Cheſts would hold them very well; and I kept them afterwards in the King's Garden.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Peter *goes to his Father's; traverſes the black Mountains; takes a Flight to Mount* Alkoe; *gains the Miners; overcomes the Governour's Troops; proclaims* Georigetti *King; ſeizes the Governour; returns him the Government;* Peter *makes Laws with the Conſent of the People; and returns to* Brandleguarp *with Deputies.*

NO further Project being ripe for Execution, I took a Journey home with my Father to *Arndruumſtake*, and he would take all the Children with him. *Youwarkee* and I ſtayed about ſix Weeks, leaving all the Children with my Father.

Upon my Return, I frequently talked with *Maleck* about his Country; who they originally were, and how long it had been inhabited, and what other Countries border'd thereon, and how they lay. He told me, his Countrymen looked upon themſelves to be very ancient, but they were not very numerous; for the old Stock was almoſt worn out, by the Hardſhips they had undergone; that about three hundred Years before, he ſaid, as he had it from good Report, there were a People from beyond the Sea, or as they called themſelves from the Little-lands, had ſtrangely over-ran them; and he had heard ſay, they

they would have over-run this Country too, but they thought it would not anſwer. He ſaid, when thoſe People firſt came, they began to turn up the Earth to a prodigious Depth; and now, ſays he, bringing up ſome naſty hard Earth, of ſeveral Sorts, they put it into great Fires till it runs about like Water, and then beat it about with great heavy Things into ſeveral Shapes; and ſome of it, Sir, ſays he, looks juſt like that Stuff that lay at the Bottom of your Ship, and ſome almoſt white, and ſome red; for when I was a Boy I was to have been ſent to work amongſt them, as my Father did; but it having killed him, I came hither, as many more have done, to avoid it. And what do they do with it, ſays I, when they have beat it about as you ſay? Then, ſays he, they carry it a long way to the Sea. What then, ſays I? Why then the Little-landers take it, and ſwim over the Sea with it. And what do they do with it, ſays I? Why, ſays he, there are other People who take it from them, and go away with it. Why do they let them take it, ſays I? Becauſe, ſays he, they give them Cloaths for it. Do they want Cloaths, ſays I, more than you? He told me they had no Graundee. And what other Countries have you here about? There is one Country, ſays he, North of *Alkoe*, where they ſay, there is juſt ſuch another People as the Little-landers, and they get ſome of the things from Mount

Mount *Alkoe*. What do they do with them, ſays I? I don't know, ſays he; they fetch a great deal; but they wont let any body come into their Country. Is there no body inhabits between the Mountain *Alkoe* and the Sea? He told me no, the Little-landers would not let them.

Having got what Information I could from *Maleck*, and alſo from a Countryman or two of his, he had brought to me; I conſidered it all over, and thinks I, if I could but get Mount *Alkoe* to ſubmit, (for they had told me, they were only governed by a Deputy from the Little-lands,) to ſee the Work done, I might, by intercepting the Trade to the Sea, turn the Profit of the Country my own way; and make it paſs thro' our Hands.

I next enquired of thoſe who brought the Fruits from the great Foreſt, what ſort of Land they had there; and found by their Deſcription, it was a light Mould, and in many places well covered with Graſs and Herbs; and, by all the Report I could hear, muſt be a fruitful Country well managed; and being a flat Country, and not encompaſſed on that ſide with the black Mountain, was much higher than *Doorpt Swangeanti*. This News put me upon ſearching the Truth of it; and I made the Tour of the black Mountain, and the great Foreſt; alighting often to make my Obſervations. The Foreſt is a little

World

World of Wood without End, with here and there a fine Lawn very graſſy; and indeed the Wood-grounds bear it very well, the Trees not ſtanding in Crowds, but at a healthy Diſtance from each other. I went abundantly further than any one had ever before been, but no Variation in the woody Scene; and coming round weſtward home, I had a View of Hoximo; which is nothing but a narrow Cleft in the Earth, on the Top of the black Mountain, of a moſt extraordinary Depth; for upon dropping a Stone down, you ſhall hear it ſtrike and hum for a long time before all is quiet again; and laying my Ear over the Cleft, whilſt I ordered one of my Attendants to throw a large Stone down; after the uſual thumps and humming, I imagined I heard it daſh in Water, ſo that it is not impoſſible it may reach to the Sea; which is at leaſt ſix or ſeven Miles below it. Into this Hole, all dead Bodies are precipitated, from the King to the Beggar; for four Glumms holding by the Ankles and Wriſts of the Deceaſed, fly with them to Hoximo, and throw them down, whilſt the Air is filled with the Lamentations of the Relations of the Deceaſed, and of ſuch others as are induced to follow the Corps for the ſake of the Wines, on ſuch Occaſions plentifully diſtributed to all Comers by the Gentry; and, in the beſt Proportion they are able, by even the meaneſt amongſt them.

After a ſtay of about fourteen Days at home, I fixed my next Trip for Mount *Alkoe*; and having told *Maleck* my Deſign, he ſaid, he would go with me with all his Heart; but feared I ſhould get no *Brandleguarpine* to bear me: For he told me, they had an old Tradition, that *Mindrack* [the Devil] lived there, and would not go for all the World; which has been the greateſt Security that Country has had, for this would have devoured them elſe, ſays he.

I ſpoke to the King, to *Naſgig*, the Ragams, and found them all unanimous, that the Mountain *Alkoe* was the Habitation of *Mindrack*, and that the Noiſes which had been heard there were his Servants beating bad Men. Says I to myſelf, here is one of the uſefulleſt Projects upon Earth ſpoiled, by an unaccountable Prepoſſeſſion; what muſt be done to overcome this Prejudice?

I told *Maleck*, I found what he ſaid to be too true, as to the People of *Brandleguarp*; but, ſays I, are there not enough of your Countrymen here, to carry me thither; he believing there were, I ordered him to contract with them; but it vexed me very much, to be obliged to take theſe Men. However, tho' I reſolved to go, yet I choſe to reaſon the Ragams into the Project, if I could; thinking they would ſoon bring the People over.

I called ſeveral of the Ragams together, and ſaid: Becauſe you are a wiſer and more thinking

People than the Vulgar, I have applied myſelf to your Judgments, in the Affair of Mount *Alkoe*. Now conſider with yourſelves, whether you have any real Reaſon beyond a Prepoſſeſſion, for thinking theſe People Fiends or Devils Servants, as you call them, without further Examination; for, according to my Comprehenſion, they only underſtanding the Nature of ſeveral ſorts of Earth, reduce them by Labour and Fire to ſolid Subſtances, for the Uſe of Mankind; and the want of theſe things is the Reaſon of your living as you do, without an hundredth part of the Benefits of Life. Theſe ſort of People, theſe Noiſes, and theſe Operations, which you hear and ſee carried on at *Alkoe*, are to be heard and ſeen in my Country; and we deal and traffick with their Labours, from one End of the World to the other; and we who are with them the happieſt, without them ſhould be the moſt miſerable of People. Did not ſome of you ſee at my Entertainment, what I called my Knives, and Forks, and Spoons, my Piſtols, Cutlaſſes, and Silver Cup; all theſe, and infinitely more, are the Produce of theſe poor Mens Induſtry. Now, ſays I, if we ſettle a Communication with theſe People, your Dues will be all paid in theſe curious things; you will have your People imployed in working them, and have Strangers applying to you to ſerve them with what they want; who, in return, will give you what you want; and you will find yourſelves known

known and reſpected in the World. Finding ſome of theſe Arguments, applied to the Men, had ſtaggered them a little; I applied to their Senſes. Says I, it ſtill appears to me, that you have your Prejudices hanging on you; but what will you ſay, if I go thither, and return ſafe? will you be afraid to follow me another time? They perſuaded me from it, as a dangerous Experiment; but ſaid, if I did return, they would not think there was ſo much in it as they ſuſpected.

Maleck having choſen me out fourſcore of his Countrymen, in about a Month's time I trained them up to the Knowledge of my Piſtols, and Cutlaſſes, and the Management of them; and taking a Cheſt with me for the Arms and other Neceſſaries, we ſallied up to the black Mountain. I reſted there, and there *Naſgig* and *Laſmeel* overtook me; ſaying, that when they found me obſtinate to go, they could not in their Hearts leave me, happen what would. This put new Spirits into me, and we conſulted how the Noiſes lay, and agreed to engage firſt upon the Skirts of them, where the Smoaks were moſt ſtraggling. I charged ſix Guns, and all my Piſtols, which I kept in my Cheſt, and ordered them to alight with me, about an hundred Paces from the firſt Smoak they ſaw; then ordered three of them to carry my Guns after me, and twelve of them to take Piſtols and follow me;

but not to fire till I gave Orders. The Remainder I left with the Baggage.

We marched up to the Smoak, which iſſued out of a low Arch-way juſt at the Foot of the Mountain. It was very light there with the Flames of the Vulcano, and entring the Arch, a Fellow ran at me with a red-hot Iron-bar; him I ſhot dead, and ſeeing two more and a Woman there, who ſtood with their Faces to the Wall of the Hut or Room, as unwilling to be ſeen; I ordered *Maleck* to ſpeak to them in a known Tongue, and tell them we were no Enemies, nor intended them any Hurt; and that their Companion's Fate was owing to his own Raſhneſs, in running firſt at me with the hot Bar; and that if they would ſhew themſelves good-natured and civil to us, we would be ſo to them; but if they offered to reſiſt openly, or uſe any manner of Treachery towards us, they might depend upon the ſame Fate their Companion had juſt ſuffered.

Upon hearing this, they approached us; and ſhewing great Tokens of Submiſſion, I delivered my Gun to *Maleck*, and bad them go on with their Work, ordering all the Guns out of the Shop for fear of a Spark. I then perceived they were direct Forges, but made after another Manner from ours, their Wind being made by a great Wheel, like a Wheel of a Water-mill, which worked with the Fans or Wings in a large Trough, and

and cauſed a prodigious Iſſue of Air, thro' a ſmall Hole in the Back of the Fire-place. They were then drawing out Iron-bars.

I gave each of theſe Men, and alſo to the Woman, a Dram of Brandy; which they ſwallowed down very greedily, and looked for more, and ſeemed very pleaſant. I then inquired into the Trade; by whom, and how it was carried on? and they told me juſt as *Maleck* had done. I then aſked where the Mines lay? and one of them looking full at me ſaid, then you know what we are about. Yes, ſays I, very well; he told me, the Mine was, in his Language as *Maleck* interpreted it, about a Quarter of a Mile off, and directed me to it. I ordered them to go on with their Work, telling them, tho' I left a Guard over them, it was only that they might not raiſe their Neighbours to diſturb me; tho' if they did, I ſhould ſerve them all as I had done their Companion; and left four Men with Piſtols at the Arch-way.

I proceeded to the Iron Mine, but ſuppoſe the Men were all within; for I ſaw no body, but there were many large Heaps of Ore lying, which I felt of, and, being vaſtly heavy, I ſuppoſed it might be rich in Metal.

I returned to my Men at the Arch, and aſked them, what other Mines there might be in that Country, and of what other Metals; but *Maleck* not knowing the Metals themſelves, was not able

to interpret the Names they called them by. I then ſhewed them an *Engliſh* Half-penny, a *Portugueſe* Piece of Silver Money, and my Gold Watch; and aſking if they had any of thoſe; they pointed to the Half-penny and Silver Piece, but ſhook their Heads at the Watch. I then ſhewed them a Muſket-ball; and they ſaid, they had a great deal of that.

I deſired them to ſhew me the way to the Copper Mine, pointing my Finger to the Half-penny, and told them, if they would go with me, they ſhould have ſome more, pointing to my Brandy; and they readily agreed, if I would ſtand by them for leaving their Work. I believe, it might be two Miles further on the right to the Copper Mine, and as theſe Men had the Graundee, I expected they would have flown by me; but I found they had a light Chain round their Graundee, which prevented them; ſo I walked too, and having made them my Friends, by being familiar with them, I deſired they would go in, and let the Head-man of the Works know, that a Stranger deſired to ſpeak with him and view his Works; and to inform him how peaceable I was, if he uſed me civilly; but that I could ſtrike him dead at once, if he did not.

I don't know how they managed, or what Report they made; but the Man came to me very courteouſly, and I bad *Maleck* aſk if he came in Friendſhip, as I did to him; and he giving

giving me that Aſſurance, I went in with him, taking *Naſgig* and *Maleck* with me, and leaving our Fire-arms without. I ordered them both, as I did myſelf, to carry their Cutlaſſes ſheathed in their Hands, for fear of a Surprize. We ſaw a great Quantity of Copper Ore, and ſeveral melting Fats, being juſt at the Mouth of the Mine; the Mine running horizontally into the Side of the Mountain; and, as they ſaid, was very rich. I gave the Head-man a little Brandy, and two or three more of them, who had been induſtrious in ſhewing and explaining things to me.

I deſired the Fore-man to walk out with me, and aſking how long he had been in that Imploy; he told me, he was a Native of the *Born* Iſles, and was brought thither young; where he firſt wrought in the Iron, then in the Silver, and now in this Mine. That he had been there twenty Years, and never expected to be delivered from his miſerable Slavery; but as he was now Overſeer of that Work, he did pretty well, tho' nothing like Freedom. He told me, they expected ſeveral new Slaves quickly; for the Mines killed thoſe they did not agree with, ſo faſt, they were very thinly wrought at preſent, and that the Governor was gone to the Iſles to get more Men. I was glad to hear this: And pray, ſays I, where does the Governor reſide? He, pointing to the place, told me. And what Guard, ſays I, may he keep? About four hundred Men, but no body

durſt moleſt him, ſays he, for he tortures them in ſuch a manner, never killing them, that not the leaſt thing can be done againſt his Will.

After we had talked a good while on the Miſery of Slavery, and finding him a Man fit for my Purpoſe; I aſked him, if he would go with me to *Brandleguarp*, for, ſaid I, there are certainly good Mines in thoſe Mountains; and if you will over-look them, you ſhall be free, and have whatever you deſire. He ſhook his Head, ſaying, how could he expect to be free, where all the reſt were Slaves; and beſides, ſays he, they are in ſuch Commotions among themſelves, that it is ſaid, the State will be torn to Pieces. You are miſtaken, ſays I, very much; I myſelf have ſettled Peace amongſt them, and killed the Uſurper. Is it poſſible, ſays he, and are you the Man, it was ſaid they expected to come out of the Sea? The very ſame, ſays I, and as to Slavery, there is not a Slave in the Kingdom, nor ſhall be here, if you will hearken to me. That would be a good time indeed, ſays he. Well, ſays I, my Friend, I promiſe you it ſhall be ſo; only obſerve this, that when I come to reduce the Governor, do none of you Miners aſſiſt him. He promiſed he would let the other Miners ſecretly know it, and all ſhould be as I wiſhed; but deſired me to be expeditious, for the Governor was expected every Day.

I went from him to the other Mines, and my Guides with me; who ſeeing me ſo well received at the Copper Mine, and reporting it to the others, it cauſed my Proceedings to go on ſmoothly, and my Offers to be readily embraced wherever I came.

Having prepared Matters thus, I ſet *Maleck* and his Countrymen upon the Natives, to treat with them about Submiſſion to *Georigetti*, on promiſe of Freedom; who being aſſured of what I had done at *Brandleguarp*, and in hopes of like Liberty, readily came into it; ſo that the only thing remaining was, before the Governor's Return, to attack the Soldiery. Having therefore renewed my Engagements with the Miners, and believing myſelf upon as good Terms with the Natives as I could wiſh; I was adviſed by *Naſgig* and *Laſmeel*, to return for Cannon and a large Army, before I attacked the Soldiery: But I, who had all my Life rode upon the Spur, having conſidered that an Opportunity once loſt is never to be regained; and tho' I could have wiſhed for ſome Cannon, I valued the Men but for ſhew, I therefore formed my Reſolves to march with the Force I had next Morning, and pitch upon a Plain juſt by the Governor's Garriſon, in order if I could to draw his Men out. I did ſo, and it anſwered; for upon the firſt News of my coming, they appeared with a ſort of heavy headed Weapons; which hurling round,

they throw upwards aſlope, in order to light upon the Backs of their Enemies in flight, and beat them down; but they could not throw them above thirty Paces.

I ſat ſtill in my Chair, with a Gun in my Hand, and *Maleck* with another at my Elbow; with four more lying by me, ready to be preſented; *Laſmeel* ſtanding by to charge again, as faſt as we fired. I ordered a Party of twenty of my Men with Cutlaſſes, to attack the Van of the Enemy, by ruſhing impetuouſly upon them, they coming but thin againſt me; for I was not willing to imploy my Pieces, till I could do more Execution. They began the Attack about an hundred Yards before me, not very high in the Air; and my Cutlaſs-Men having avoided the firſt Flight of their Weapons, fell upon them with ſuch Fury, that chopping here a Limb, and there a Graundee, which diſabling their Flight was equally pernicious, they fell by Scores before me: But I ſeeing thoſe in the Rear, which made a Body of near three hundred, coming very ſwift and cloſe in treble Ranks, one above the other, hoping to bear down my Handful of Men with their Numbers; I ordered my Men all to retire behind me, and not till the Enemy were paſſed over my Head, to fall on them. *Maleck* and I, as they came near, each firing a Piece together, and whipping up another, and then another, in an Inſtant; they fell round us, roaring,

ing,

ing, and making a horrid Yell. This, the reſt ſeeing, went over our Mens Heads, not without many falling from the Cuts of my Men; and thoſe who eſcaped were never heard of more.

The Miners, who from their ſeveral Stations had beheld the Action, came ſinging and dancing from every Quarter round me; and if I had not drawn my Men cloſe in a Circle about me, would probably out of Affection have done me more hurt, than two of the Governor's Armies; for againſt theſe, common Gratitude denied the uſe of Force, and they crowding every one but to touch me they ſaid; for fear of being preſſed to Death myſelf, as ſome of them almoſt were, I ordered them to be let in thro' my Men, at one Side of the Ring, and paſſing by, and touching me, to be let out on the other Side; and this quite quieted them, but kept me in Penance a long time.

We then marched in a Body all into the Town, where we were going to proclaim *Georigetti* King of Mount *Alkoe*; when a ſurly Fellow, much wiſer than the reſt, as he thought, being about to harangue the People, againſt being too haſty in it, was knocked down, and trod to Death for his Pains; and we went on with the Proclamation, giving general Liberty to all Perſons without Exception.

The

The next thing to be conſidered was, how to oppoſe the Governor when he came; and for that Purpoſe, I inquired into the Manner of his coming, the Road he came, and his Attendants; and being informed, that an hundred of his Guards who had not the Graundee, waited for him at the Sea-ſide; and that he had no other Guard, except a few Friends and the Slaves he went for; and that the Slaves always came firſt, ſix in a Rank tied together, under Convoy of a few of his Guards; I went in Perſon to view the Rout he came, and ſeeing a very convenient Poſt in a thick Wood, thro' which they were to paſs, from whence we might ſee them, before they came near us; I poſted a Watch on the Sea-ſide of the Wood, and myſelf and Men lay on the hither Side of it, juſt where the Governor's Party muſt come out of it again: So that my Watch giving Notice of their Approach, we might be ready to fall on, at their coming out of our Side of the Wood.

When we had waited three Days, our Watch brought Word they were coming: So we kept as cloſe as poſſible, letting the Slaves and Guards march on, who came by about two Hours March before the Governor: But ſo ſoon as he approached, I drew up my Men on the Plain within the Wood, in Ranks; ordering them to lie cloſe on their Bellies, till they ſaw me riſe, and then to riſe, follow me, and obey Orders.

Several

Several of the firſt Ranks having paſſed the Wood; juſt as the Governor had entred the open Country, I roſe, and bad *Maleck* call aloud, that if any of them ſtirred or lifted up a Weapon, he was a dead Man; and then ſeeing one of the foremoſt running, I fetched him down with a Muſket-ſhot, bidding *Maleck* tell the reſt, that if they ſubmitted, and laid down their Weapons, they were ſafe; but if they refuſed, I would ſerve them all as I had done him who fled. This Speech, with the Terror of the Gun, fixed every Man to his place like a Statue.

I then went forward to the Governor, and by *Maleck* my Interpreter, aſked him, who they all were with him; he told me, his Slaves. I then made him call every Man before him, and give him Freedom; which, finding no way to avoid, for I looked very ſtern, he did, and I had enough to do to quiet my new Freemen, who I thought would have devoured me for Joy. I aſked whither he was going? He ſaid to his Government. Under whom do you hold it, ſays I? Under the Zaps of the Iſles, ſays he. I then told him, that whoever held that Government for the future muſt receive it from the Hands of *Georigetti*, the King of that Country, to whom all the Natives and Miners had already engaged their Fidelity. I told him, both Natives and Foreigners had been all declared free.

The

The Governor ſeemed much dejected, and told me, he hoped I would not uſe him or his Company ill. I told him, that depended intirely on his own and their good Behaviour. I aſked who his Friends were that were with him, he ſaid, they were ſome of the Zaps Relations, who were come to ſee the Methods of the Government, and inſpect the Mines.

Ordering all the Governor's Guards and Friends to go before, and all my own but *Maleck*, to keep backwards ſome Paces; I entred into Diſcourſe with him, about the State of the Iſles, and the Country of *Alkoe*; and finding him a judicious Perſon, and not a Native of the Iſles; I thought with ſome Management he might prove a uſeful Perſon to me, but did not like the Character I had heard of his Severity: So I plainly told him, that only one thing prevented my making him a greater Man than ever he was; which was I had been informed, he had a Roughneſs in his Nature, which drove him to Extremities with the poor Slaves; which I could not bear. Sir, ſays he, whatever a Man is in his natural Temper, where Slavery abounds, it is neceſſary to act, or at leaſt be thought to do ſo, in a mercileſs Manner. I am intruſted with the Government of a Land of only Slaves; who have no more Love, nor are they capable of any, for me, than the Herbs of the Ground have. I am to render an Account to my Maſters of their Labours;

Labours; they work by Force, and would not ſtir a Step without it, or the Fear of Correction; for which Reaſon, the Rod muſt be ever held over them; and tho' I ſeldom let it fall, when I do, the Suffering of one is too long remembred, to permit others quickly to ſubject themſelves to the like Puniſhment: And this Method, I judged to be the moſt mild; as the Death or Sufferings of one but ſeldom, muſt tho' ever ſo ſevere, be milder than the frequent Execution of Numbers. And as to my appearing ſevere to them, my Poſt required it; for Mercy to Slaves, being interpreted into Fear, arms them with Violence againſt you.

I could not gainſay this, eſpecially as he told me he was glad I had freed them all; for no Man, ſays he, but if he were to chuſe, would rather reign by Love, which he may in a free Country, but is impracticable in one of Slaves, rather than by Fear, which alone will keep the latter in Subjection.

I aſked him, whether as he knew the Nature of the Country, and the Buſineſs of the Governour, he could become faithful to my Maſter *Georigetti*. He told me, he had ever been faithful to his Maſters the Zaps; and would till he was ſure, without ſuſpecting in the leaſt my Veracity, all was true that I was pleaſed to tell him; for nothing could ſatisfy his Conſcience, but being an Eye-witneſs of it; and then being diſcharged from

from any further Capacity of ſerving them in an open way, he ſhould be free to chuſe his own Maſter; of all whom, *Georigetti* ſhould to him, be moſt preferable; but begged me not to interpret his Deſire of retaining Fidelity to his old Maſters till he could no longer ſerve them, into an Implication of aſſiſting them, by either open or concealed Practices; for wherever he engaged, he would be true to the utmoſt.

At the End of ſix Days, for I travelled on Foot with them, we arrived at the Governor's Palace, which we found without a Guard; and all the Slaves he had ſent before him, at Liberty: So I ordered my Men to ſupply the uſual Guard, and took my Lodging in the Governor's Apartment.

As *Gadſi*, for that was the Governor's Name, was not confined, or any of his Friends; he came into my Apartment, and told me, ſince he had found all things anſwered my Report; if I pleaſed, he would quit the Palace to me, and every thing belonging to the Government. I told him, he ſaid well. He did ſo, taking with him only ſome few things his own Property. So ſoon as he was without the Territory of the Palace, I ſent for him and his Friends back again; he could not help being dejected at his Return, fearing ſome Miſchief. *Gadſi*, ſays I, this Palace, and this Country, which I now hold for my

 Maſter

Maſter *Georigetti*, I deliver in Cuſtody to you as his Governor; and now charge you to make Acknowledgement of your Fidelity to him. Then taking it from him in Terms of my own propoſing, I delivered him the Regalia of his Government, charging him to maintain Freedom; but, ſays I, let no Man eat, who will not work, as the Country and the Produce is the King's.

I then ſummoned an Aſſembly of the People, and ſent Notice to all the Miners to attend me. I told them, all that the King deſired of them was, to make themſelves happy; and as the Mines at preſent, ſays I, are the only Imployment of this Country, I would have it agreed by your own Conſent, for I will force nothing upon you, that every Man amongſt you, from ſixteen to ſixty, ſhall work every third Week at the Mines, and other Duties of the Government; and two Weeks out of three ſhall be your own, to provide in for your Families. And if I live to come back again, you ſhall each Man have ſo much Land of his own, as ſhall be ſufficient for his Family; and I will make it my Buſineſs to ſee for Seeds, to improve it with. And this Week's Work in three, and if afterwards it can be done with leſs, in four, ſhall be an Acknowledgement to the King, for his Bounty to you. Do you agree to this? They all with one Voice cried out, *we do*. Then, ſays I, agree amongſt yourſelves,

yourſelves, and part into proper Diviſions for carrying on the Work; that is, into four parts, one for each Sort of Metal; and then again, each of thoſe four into three parts; and on every ſeventh Day in the Morning, let thoſe who are to begin, meet thoſe who are leaving off Work; ſo that there be clear ſix Days Work, and one of going and returning. Do you all agree to this? All cried, *we do.* Then, ſays I, whoever neglects his Duty, unleſs thro' Sickneſs, or by Leave of the Governor, ſhall work a double Week. Do you agree to this? *We do.* Then all Matters of Difference between you ſhall be decided by the Governor; and in caſe of any Injury or Injuſtice, or wrong Judgment in the Governor, by *Georigetti.* Do you agree? *We do.* Then, ſays I, agree upon ten Men, two for the Natives, and two for each Mineral Work, to ſend with me to *Brandleguarp*, to petition *Georigetti* to confirm theſe Laws, till you ſhall make others yourſelves; and to acknowledge his Sovereignity. Do you agree? *We do.*

I then told them, that as thoſe who had been Slaves, were now free, they might if they pleaſed, return home; but, as I ſhould make it my Endeavour to provide ſo well for them, in all the Comforts of Life, I believed moſt of them would be of Opinion, their Intereſt would keep them where they were. And above all things, recommending a hearty Union, between the new

Freemen

Freemen and the Natives, and to marry amongſt each other, and to continue in Love amongſt themſelves, and Duty to the King and his Governor; and promiſing ſpeedily to return, and ſettle what was wanting, I diſmiſſed the Aſſembly, and ſet out for *Brandleguarp* with the ten Deputies: But I left *Laſmeel* behind with the Governor, and two Servants with him, to give me immediate Notice, in caſe any Diſturbance ſhould happen in my Abſence.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Peter *arrives with the Deputies; preſents them to the King; they return; a Colony decreed to be ſent thither;* Naſgig *made Governor; manner of chuſing the Colony; a Flight-race, and the Intent of it;* Walſi *wins the Prize, and is found to be a Gawrey.*

AS we alighted at the Palace late at Night, I kept the Deputies with me till next Morning; when I went to the King, deſiring them to ſtay in my Apartment, till I had received his Majeſty's Orders for their Admiſſion.

The King was but juſt up when I came in; and ſeeing me, embraced me, ſaying, dear Father, I am glad to meet you again alive; your ſtay has given me the utmoſt Perplexity, and could I have prevailed with any of my Servants to have followed you, I had ſent before this time to have known what was become of you.

I told his Majeſty, the greateſt Pleaſure of my Life conſiſted in the Knowledge of his Majeſty's Eſteem for me; and he might depend upon it, I would take care of myſelf from a double Motive, whilſt I was in his Dominions; the one, from the natural Obligation of my own Preſervation, and the other, equally compulſive, of continuing ſerviceable to his Majeſty, till I had made him more

more famous than his Anceſtor, the great *Begſurbeck.*

I told his Majeſty, as a ſmall Token of my Duty and Affection to him, I was come to make him a Tender, of the additional Title of King of Mount *Alkoe.* Father, ſays he, we ſhall never be able to get a ſufficient Number of my Subjects to go thither; for tho' your ſafe Return may be ſome Encouragement, yet whilſt their old Apprehenſions ſubſiſt, and I know not what will alter them, we can do no Good; and indeed were they free to go, and under no Suſpicion of Danger, it would coſt abundance of Men to conquer Mount *Alkoe.*

Great Sir, ſaid I, you miſtake me; I told you, I came to make you a Tender of it; I have proclaimed you King there, and Freedom to the People; I have held an Aſſembly of the Kingdom; placed a Governor; taken the Engagement of himſelf and Subjects to you; ſettled Laws amongſt them for your Benefit, the full third part of all their Labour; have brought ten Deputies, two from each Denomination of People amongſt them; and they only wait your Command to be admitted, to beg your Acceptance of their Submiſſion, and pray your royal Protection.

Father, ſays the King, you amaze me! but as it is your doing, let them come in.

The

The Deputies being received, and heard, by *Maleck* their Interpreter, very graciouſly; the King told them, in a very favourable Speech, that whatever his Father had done, or ſhould do, they might accept as done by himſelf; and commanded them to remind the Governor, for whom he had the higheſt Eſteem, to obſerve the Laws, without the leaſt Deviation, till his Father ſhould make ſuch further Additions, as were conſiſtent with his own Honour, and their future Freedom; and having feaſted them in a moſt magnificent Manner, they returned, highly ſatisfied with the Honours they had received.

This Tranſaction being immediately noiſed abroad; all the *Colambs* came themſelves, and the great Cities by their Deputies, ſent his Majeſty their Compliments upon the Occaſion; and there was nothing but Mirth and Rejoicing throughout the whole Kingdom. And thoſe who had refuſed going with me, as *Maleck* told me, hung their Heads for Shame and Sorrow, that they had miſſed the Opportunity of bearing a part in the Expedition.

I demonſtrated to the King, that the only way to preſerve that Kingdom was, to ſettle a large Colony on the Plains, between the Mountain and the Sea, to intercept clandeſtine Trade, and make a ſtand againſt any Force that might be ſent from the Little-lands, to recover the Mines. And I promiſed

promiſed to be preſent at the Settlement, and an Aſſiſtant in it.

Moſt of the *Colambs*, as I ſaid, being at Court, upon this complimentary Affair; the King ſummoned them, for their Advice on my Propoſals; and told them, he had ordered me to lay before them my Thoughts on the Affairs of that Kingdom; and after many Compliments and Encomiums had paſſed on me, I told them, the Neceſſity of the Colony, the Commodity that would ariſe from it, how I intended to manage it, and what Proſpect I had of introducing amongſt them ſeveral extraordinary Conveniencies they had never before had.

The *Colambs*, who for want of Practice this way, knew but little of the Matter; thinking nevertheleſs, that in the general Turn of things, they muſt ſomehow come in for a Share; approved of all I ſaid. I deſired them then to ſettle, out of what part of the People, and how to be nominated, ſuch Choice of the Colony ſhould be made for the new Settlement; but found them much at a loſs to fix on any Method of doing it: So I told them, I believed it would be the beſt way to iſſue an Order, for ſuch as would willingly go, to repair to a particular Rendezvous; and in caſe ſufficient ſhould not appear voluntary, to iſſue another Order, that the *Colambs* out of their ſeveral Diſtricts, ſhould compleat the Number; ſo as to make a Body of 12000 Men of Arms,

Arms, beſides Women and Children; and that ſuch a Territory ſhould be allotted to each, with ſo much Wood-grounds, in common to all, as would ſuffice for their Subſiſtence; all which paſſed the Vote.

I then told them, that this large People muſt have an Head or Governor, to keep them to their Duties, and to determine Matters of Property, and all Diſputes amongſt them. Here, they one and all nominated me; but I told them, I apprehended I could be more uſeful other ways, having too many things in my Head for the general Good, to confine myſelf to any particular Province; but if they would excuſe me, in preſuming to recommend a Perſon, it ſhould be *Naſgig*. And immediately *Naſgig* being ſent for, and accepting it, they conferred it upon him.

All things, as I judged, went on in ſo ſmooth a way in reference to the new Colony, that I was preparing with the Aſſiſtance of the proper Officer, Expreſſes to be ſent with the King's Gripſacks, into the ſeveral Provinces, with Notice of theſe Orders, and an Appointment for a Rendezvous. But whilſt this was doing, abundance of People came crowding about me, to be informed, whether I thought it ſafe for them to go; and, I believe, I had fully ſatisfied all their Scruples; when, by ſome Management of the Ragams, who, having ſo long declared Mount *Alkoe* to be inhabited by *Mindrack*, did not care

the

the People ſhould all of a ſudden find out they had deceived them, there was a Report ran current, that tho' I, and my Bearers, who were all Mount *Alkoe* Men, returned ſafe; yet if any of the *Brandleguarpians* had gone, they would never have come back again. This Rumour coming to my Ears, and fearing whitherto it might grow, I had no ſmall Proſpect of a Diſappointment: And I thereupon ſtopped iſſuing the Orders, till I had conſidered what further to do in the Affair; at length, being perſuaded I had already ſatisfied abundance of their Scruples, and in order to diſſipate the Doubts of others, and to familiarize them in ſome meaſure to the Country and People of Mount *Alkoe*; I propoſed a Prize to be flown for, and gave notice of it for ſix Days all about the Country, both to thoſe of Mount *Alkoe*, and thoſe of *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*: That whoever, except thoſe who were with me in the late Expedition, ſhould make the moſt ſpeedy Flight to the Governor's of Mount *Alkoe*, to carry a Meſſage, and bring me an Anſwer from *Laſmeel*, ſhould have one of my Piſtols, with a Quantity of Powder, and ſo many Balls; and the Perſon who ſhould be ſecond, ſhould have a Cutlaſs and Belt. The time being fixed, very few had entred in the firſt two or three Days; but on the third Day came ſeveral over from *Alkoe* to enter; which the *Brandleguarpines* ſeeing, and having equal Inclination to the Prize; after half a Dozen

of them had entred on the fourth Morning, before Noon on the fifth I had near ſixty of them on my Liſt, beſides the *Alkoe* Men; making in all about one hundred.

The time of ſtarting was fixed for the ſixth Morning, from off the Rock, on the back-ſide of the Palace; upon my firing a Piſtol.

This unuſual Diverſion occaſioned a prodigious Confluence of Spectators; for ſcarce a Perſon in *Brandleguarp*, except thoſe who were either too young or too old for flight, but were upon one or other of the Rocks; even the King himſelf, and all his Court were there; with infinite Numbers from all diſtant Parts.

I had diſpatched a Letter by one of my old Bearers to *Laſmeel* ſome Days before, to inform him of it, that he might get two Letters ready wrote, one to deliver to the firſt, and another to the ſecond Meſſenger; but not to take further notice of the reſt: Now my Flight-race being for the equal Benefit of both the Kingdoms, it happened, as I was in hopes it would, that ſo many of the Mount *Alkans* coming over to me to be entred, and ſtaying with me till the Flight began; and ſuch vaſt Numbers of Perſons meeting of both Nations upon the black Mountains, to ſee them go and return; and ſeveral of the *Swangeantines* going, out of Bravado, quite thro' with the Flyers; the Intercourſe of the two Nations was that Day ſo great, and the Diſcourſe they

they had with the Natives and Miners, ſo ſtripped the *Swangeantines* of their old Apprehenſions of Danger from Mount *Alkoe*; that in three Days after, the whole Dread of the Place was vaniſhed, and he would then have been thought mad, who had attempted to revive it.

The time being come, I ſet my Flyers in a Row on the outer Edge of the Rock; and having given Notice, that no one ſhould preſume to riſe till the Flyers were on the Graundee, and at ſuch a Diſtance; I then let the Flyers know, I ſhould ſoon give Fire; which I had no ſooner done, but down they all dropt as one Man, as it were head-long from the Edge of the Mountain; and preſently the whole Field were after them. They ſkimmed with incredible Swiftneſs croſs the Face of the Plain, between the Rock and the Mountain; the Force of which Deſcent ſwung them as it were up the Mountain's Side, in an almoſt, upright Poſture; till ſeeming to ſweep the Edge of the Mountain with their Bellies, they ſlid o'er its Surface, till they were loſt in the Body of the *Swangean*; our Rocks echoing the Shouts of the Mountaineers. I fired my Piſtol by my Watch, at 9 o'Clock in the Morning; but had no occaſion to inquire when it was thought they would return; for every one was paſſing his Opinion upon it. Some ſaid it could not be till Midnight, or very near it; and others, that it would be almoſt next Morning. However, we

went to Dinner, and coming again about ſix o'Clock by my Watch, I was told by the People on the Rock, as the general Opinion, for it was then top-full, that they could not yet be expected a long time, and the major part concluded, they could not be near half way home yet; when on a ſudden, we heard a prodigious Shout from the Mountain; which growing nearer and nearer to us, and louder and louder; in a few Moments came a ſlim young Fellow, and nimbly alighting on the Rock, tripped briſkly forward, as not able to ſtop himſelf at once, from the Violence of the Force he came with; and delivered me a Letter from *Laſmeel*, as I was ſitting in my Chair. I gave him Joy of the Prize, and ordered him to come to my Apartment, ſo ſoon as I got home, and he ſhould have it. I then aſked him where he left the other Flyers; he told me, he knew nothing of them, ſince he came paſt the Forges in his Return; for there he met them going to *Laſmeel*. Why that, ſays I, muſt be a great way on this ſide the Governor's. He told me, about half an Hour's Flight. I then told him, as he muſt be ſtrained with ſo hard a Flight, it would be better if he lay down, and call'd on me in the Morning. He thanked me, and after he had told me his Name was *Walſi*, he ſaid he would take my Advice; and ſpringing up as light as Air, went off: The Rock being quite thronged with

with thoſe who had followed from the Mountain, to ſee the Victor.

When *Walſi* came in, it was juſt ſeven o'Clock by my Watch; ſo that according to the beſt Computation by Miles, I could make from their Deſcriptions of things, I judged he had flown at little more or leſs, than at the Rate of a Mile a Minute.

I ſtayed till near nine o'Clock upon the Rock; where it being cold, and the time tedious, I was taking *Quilly* home with me, and deſigned that *Maleck* ſhould wait for the coming of the ſecond; but hearing again a Shout from the Mountain, I reſolved to ſee the ſecond come in myſelf. The Noiſe increaſing, I preſently ſaw the whole Air full of People, very near me, for I had retired near two hundred Paces from the Edge of the Rock, to give Room to the Flyers to alight, and expected nothing leſs than to be borne down by them; when I ſpied two Competitors, one juſt over the Back of the other; the uppermoſt bearing down upon the other's Graundee; their Heads being juſt equal: So that the under Man perceiving it impoſſible to ſink lower for the Rock, or to mount higher for the Man above him; and as darting ſide-ways would loſe time, and fearing to bruſh his Belly againſt the Rock, he ſlackned juſt to job up his Head in his Antagoniſt's Stomach; which giving the upper Man a ſmart Check with the Pain; and the under one ſtriking, at that

Inſtant, one bold Stroke with his Graundee, he fell juſt with his Head at my Feet, and the other upon him, with his Head in the under Man's Neck.

Thus they lay for a conſiderable time breathleſs and motionleſs, ſave the working of their Lungs, and heaving of their Breaſts; when each aſked me, if he was not the firſt; and the under Man giving me a Letter; I told them no, *Walſi* had been in almoſt two Hours ago. They both ſaid it was impoſſible; they were ſure no Glumm in the *Doorpt* could out-flie either of them. I ordered them both to call on me in the Morning, and I would ſee they ſhould have Right done to their Pretenſions. The under Man had but juſt told me his Name was *Naggitt*; when another arrived, who ſeeing *Naggitt* before him, told me he was ſure he was ſecond; but on ſeeing the other alſo, he gave it up.

I would ſtay no longer, it being now ſo late; but the next Morning I was informed, that all the reſt had ſtopped at the Mountain but two; who were obliged to give out before, being overſtrained, and unable to hold it.

The next Morning, *Walſi* was the firſt at my Apartment, when I happened to be with the King; and ſpeaking of his Buſineſs to *Quilly*, he ordered him to ſtay in my Gallery till I came back: And *Quilly* preſently after ſeeing *Youwarkee*, told her, the Victor at the Flight-race

was

was waiting for me in the Gallery. *Youwarkee*, who had great Curioſity to ſee him, having heard how long he came in before the reſt; ſtepped into the Gallery, and taking a Turn or two there, fell into Diſcourſe with him about his Flight. And as Women are very inquiſitive, ſhe diſtinguiſhed by the Flyer's Anſwers, Speech, Shape, and manner of Addreſs, that it was certainly a Gawrey ſhe was talking with; tho' ſhe had endeavoured to diſguiſe herſelf, by rouling in her Hair, and tying it round her Head with a broad Chaplet like a Man; and by the Thinneſs of her Body, and Flatneſs of her Breaſts, might fairly enough have paſs'd for one, to a leſs penetrating Eye than *Youwarkee*'s. But *Youwarkee* putting ſome Queſtions to her, and ſaying ſhe was more like a Gawrey than a Glumm; ſhe put the poor Girl, for ſo it was, to the Bluſh, and at laſt ſhe confeſſed the Deceit; but, upon her Knees, begged *Youwarkee* not to mention it, for it would be her Undoing.

This Confeſſion, gave *Youwarkee* a fair Opportunity of aſking, how ſhe came to be an Adventurer for this ſort of Prize. The Girl, finding there was no Remedy, frankly confeſſed, ſhe had a ſtrong Affection for a Glumm Boſs, who was a very ſtout Glumm, ſhe ſaid, but ſomewhat too corpulent for ſpeedy Flight; who ever ſince the Prize had been propoſed, could reſt neither Night nor Day, to think he was not ſo well qualified to

put in for it as others; eſpecially one *Naggitt*, who he well knew made his Addreſſes to her; and alſo was an Adventurer. Had it been a Matter of Strength, Valour, or Manhood, ſays he, I had had the beſt of Chances for it; but to be under a natural Incapacity of obtaining ſo glorious a Prize, as even the King himſelf is not Maſter of ſuch another; I cannot bear it. She then ſaid, he had told her, he was reſolved to give in his Name, and do his utmoſt, tho' he died in the Flight. What? ſaid he, ſhall I ſee *Naggitt* run away with it, and perhaps with you too; when he has that to lay at your Feet, which no Glumm elſe can boaſt of? No, I'll overcome, or never come home without it. I muſt confeſs Madam, ſays *Walſi*, as I knew his high Spirit could never bear to be vanquiſhed, I was afraid he would be as good as his Word, and come to ſome unlucky End; and told him, that tho' he need not have fear'd being Conqueror in any thing elſe, had it been propoſed; yet in Flight, there were ſo many, half Glumms as they were, who from their effeminate Make and Size, and little Value for any thing elſe, would certainly be in before him; that it was unworthy of a thorough Glumm, to contend with them, for what could be obtained only by thoſe, who had no Right to, or Share in any thing more excellent; and that he muſt therefore not think of more than his Fatigue for his Pains. But as he

had

had ſet his Heart ſo much upon it, I would enter, and try to get it for him; as from my Size and Make, I believed few would have a better Chance for it than myſelf. And thanks to Collwarr, Madam, ſays ſhe, I hope to make him eaſy in it; if you will but pleaſe to conceal your Knowledge of who, and what I am.

Youwarkee was mightily pleaſed with her Story, and promiſed ſhe would; but engaged her to come again to her Apartment, ſo ſoon as ſhe was poſſeſſed of the Prize.

When I returned, hearing *Walſi* waited for me, I called him in, read the Letter he brought, and finding it *Laſmeel*'s, I looked over my Liſt for *Walſi*'s Name; for I ſet them all down as they entred, and finding it the very laſt Name of all, and that it was entred but on the Morning the Race was flown: So, ſays I, *Walſi*, I find the laſt at entring is the firſt at returning; but I ſee you have been there, by what *Laſmeel* has ſent me; tho' there were ſome laſt Night, who queſtioned it, by your ſo ſpeedy Return. Here, ſays I, take the Prize, and ſee they are only uſed in the Service of your Country; and then I diſmiſſed him.

My two Competitors appeared next, for the Cutlaſs; and had each of them many Arguments to prevail with me, in favour of him; but I told them, I muſt do Juſtice; and that, tho' the Difference was ſo ſmall between them, yet,

certainly *Naggitt* was the neareſt me, at the time they both ceaſed Flight, his Face lying on my Foot; ſo that as they both complained of foul Play, and were therefore equal in that Reſpect; *Naggitt* in Juſtice muſt have it. And I gave it him with theſe Words however; take it *Naggitt*, as certainly yours by the Law of the Race; but with a Diffidence in myſelf, who beſt deſerves it.

I own I pitied the other Man's Caſe very much; as I ſhould *Naggitt*'s, had the other won it; but ſeeing the other turning away, and hearing him ſay, but by half a Head! when I had ſtrove ſo hard! as in a ſort of Dejection; I told them, they were both brave Glumms, and of intrepid Reſolution; and gave him alſo one, with the like Inſtruction as to *Walſi*.

Walſi went from me, as ſhe had promiſed to *Youwarkee*, who wanted more Diſcourſe with her; for in an Affair of Love, her gentle Heart could have dwelt all Day, upon the Repetition of any Circumſtances, which would create Delight in the enamoured. *Youwarkee* found *Walſi* ſat on Thorns, wanting to be gone; but *Youwarkee* aſking Queſtion upon Queſtion, *Walſi* got up, and begged ſhe would excuſe her, ſhe would come and ſtay at any other time; but, ſays ſhe, Madam, when the Man one loves is in Pain, for I am ſure he is on the Rack, for fear of a Diſcovery, till he ſees me; if you ever loved

loved yourſelf, you can't blame me for preſſing to relieve him.

When ſhe was gone, *Youwarkee* finding me alone, was ſo full of *Walſi*'s Adventure, ſhe could not be ſilent; but after twenty round-about Speeches, and Promiſes that I was to make not to be angry with any body, or undo any thing I had done that Day, and I know not what; out came the Story. I was prodigiouſly pleaſed with it, and wiſhed I had taken more notice of her. Says *Youwarkee*, I endeavoured to keep her till you had done, that you might have ſeen her. And why did not you, ſays I? My Dear, ſays *Youwee*, had you ſeen the poor Creature's Uneaſineſs, till ſhe got off with it, yourſelf could not have had the Heart to have deferred that Pleaſure, you would have perceived ſhe expected when ſhe came home; nor could you in Conſcience have detained her.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

The Race reconciles the two Kingdoms; the Colony proceeds; build a City; Peter *views the Country at a Diſtance; hears of a Prophecy of the King of* Norbon's *Daughter* Stygee; *goes thither; kills the King's Nephew; fulfils the Prophecy, by engaging* Stygee *to* Georigetti; *returns.*

THIS Race, notwithſtanding all that the Ragams could ſay to keep up their Credit, and to prevent the Peoples perceiving what Fools they had made of them; had ſo good and ſudden an Effect on the Peoples Prejudices; that upon iſſuing the firſt Proclamation, there was no Occaſion for the ſecond; for at leaſt twenty-five thouſand Men appeared voluntary at the Rendezvous, of the old Slaves, whoſe Maſters, tho' they were declared free, had uſed divers Devices to oppreſs them, and render even their Freedom a ſort of Slavery, beſides Women and Children: So that we had now only to pick and chuſe thoſe who would be likelieſt to be of Service to the new Colony.

Naſgig and I differed now about the Choice of Perſons; he as a Soldier, was for taking moſtly ſingle young Men, and I for taking whole Families; tho' ſome were either too old or too young for War; and upon further Conſideration,

he agreed with me; for I told him, young Men would leave a Father, Mother, or Miſtreſs behind them, which would either cauſe a hankering after home, and conſequently the bad Example of Deſertion; or elſe create an uneaſy Spirit, and perhaps a general Diſtaſte to the Settlement; ſo we choſe thoſe whole Families, where they offered, which had the moſt young Men in them firſt; then others, in like Order; after that, Man by Man, aſking them ſeverally, if any Woman they liked would go with them; and if ſo, we took her, till we had about thirteen thouſand fighting Men, beſides old Men, Women and Children; and then marching by the Palace, the King ordered ten Days Stores for every Mouth, and with this we took our Flight: But as I was always fearful of a Concourſe in the Air, *Naſgig* led them, and I brought up the Rear.

Beſides the above Number of People, I believe we could not have leſs than ten thouſand Volunteers to the black Mountain; ſome to take Leave of their Friends, and others out of Curioſity to ſee our Flight. I took three Pieces of Cannon with me, and proper Stores.

Our firſt Stage, after a ſhort Halt on the black Mountain, was to the Governor's Palace; where *Gadſi* received us with great Reſpect. I told him my Errand, which he approved; for, ſays he, Countryman, it is now as much my Intereſt to keep my old Maſters out, as ever it was to ſerve them

them when in: And you have taken the only Method in the World, to do it effectually. I conſulted him, where I ſhould fix my Colony, and by his Advice, fixed it on this Side the Wood, with ſome ſcattering Habitations behind the Wood, as Watch-houſes, to give Notice of an Enemy; having the Wood for ſhelter, before they could reach the Town, and at the worſt, the Town for a Retreat.

I found by *Gadſi*, that the Ships from the Little-lands were ſoon expected; for that he ſaid, the Zaps knew nothing yet of the Change of Government, nor could, till the Ships returned; he aſked me, as there was now a good Lading, whether I thought fit to let them have it upon proper Terms. I told him, I would not hinder their having the Metals, or endeavour to ſtop their Trade in the leaſt; but ſhould be glad to treat with them about it myſelf.

I gave the Forge-men Deſcriptions, for making Shovels, Spades, Pickaxes, Hammers, and abundance of other Iron Implements, I ſhould want in the Building the new Town; all which we got ready, and carried with us. We then took Flight, and alighted on the Spot of our intended City; and having viewed the Ground ſome Miles each way, we drew the Out-lines, and ſet a great Number of Hands to cutting down Trees, digging Holes, and making Trenches for the Foundations. In ſhort, we were all Hands at it, and the Women fetched

fetched the Proviſions; but I was obliged to ſhew them every ſingle Step they were to take, towards the new Erections: And I muſt ſay, it was with great Pleaſure I did it, they ſeldom wanting to be told twice, having as quick an Apprehenſion of what they heard or ſaw, as any People I had ever met with.

The whole City, according to our Plan, was to conſiſt of ſeveral long ſtrait Streets, parallel to each other, with Gardens backwards, each way, and traverſe Paſſages at proper Diſtances, to croſs each Street, from one to the other, quite thro' the whole City.

While this Work was in hand, I took a Progreſs to view the other Country, *Maleck* had told me of. We had not taken a very long Flight, before we ſaw at a Diſtance, ſeveral Perſons of that Country travelling to Mount *Alkoe* for Metals. I had a great mind to have ſome Talk with them about their Kingdom, and ordered my Bearers to go to them; they told me, they durſt not, for one of them would kill ten Men. I did not chuſe to force them to it, for fear of ſome Miſchief; but obſerving which way they came, and that they came in ſeveral ſmall Bodies, of ſix or eight together, and that there was a little Wood, and ſome Buſhes between me and them; I ordered my Bearers to ſink beneath the Trees out of their Sight, and to ground me juſt at the Foot of the Wood;

Wood; for I reſolved to know ſomething more of them before we parted.

I lay perdue, till they arrived within ſixty Paces of me; then aſking *Maleck* if he knew their Language, and he telling me he did, having often converſed with them at the Mines; I bid him greet them, and tell them I was a Friend, and be ſure to ſtand by me. There were ſeven of them, and many more at different Diſtances. I ſhewed myſelf, and *Maleck* ſpoke to them, when two or three of the hindermoſt ran quite away; one ſtood and looked very ſurly, but the reſt who had ſtood with him, turning to run; I bid *Maleck* tell him, if he did not call them back, I would kill them. He that ſtood, then called to them, but they mending their Pace upon it, I let fly, and ſhot one in the Shoulder; who dropping, I was afraid I had killed him. I then went up to the other, who had not ſtirred even at the Report of the Gun; ſeeming quite terrified. I took him by the Hand, and kiſſed it; which made him recover himſelf a little, and he took mine, and kiſſed it.

I bid *Maleck* tell him, I was a great Traveller, and only wanted to talk with him; but ſeeing the Man I had ſhot ſtir, I went to him, and by *Maleck* told him, I was ſorry I had hurt him; which I ſhould not have attempted, had he not ſhewn a Miſtruſt of me, by running away; for I could not bear that; this I ſaid, to keep the other

other with me. I ſaw I had hurt his Shoulder, but being at a great Diſtance, the Ball had not entred the Blade-bone, but ſtopping there, had fallen out; ſo tying my Handkerchief over it, I told him, I hoped it would ſoon be well.

I inquired into their Country, its Name, the Intent of their Journey this way, their Trades, the Fruits, Birds, and Beaſts of the Country.

The Man I had ſhot, I found, was in Pain, which gave me no little Concern; ſo I chiefly applied myſelf to the other, who told me, the Name of his Country was *Norbon*, a large Kingdom, and very populous, he ſaid, in ſome Parts of it, and was governed by *Oniwheſke*, an old and good King. He has only one Daughter, ſays he, named *Stygee*; ſo that I am afraid when he dies, it will go to a good for nothing Nephew of his, a deſperate debauched Man; who will probably ruin us, and deſtroy that Kingdom, which has been in the *Oniwheſke* Family theſe fifteen hundred Years. Won't his Daughter have the Kingdom, ſays I, after his Death, or her Children? Children, ſays he, no, that's the pity, all would be well if ſhe had but Children, and the State continue fifteen hundred Years longer in the ſame good Family. How is it poſſible for any one to know that, ſays I? You may know how long it has, but how long it will laſt, is mere gueſs-work. No, ſays he, this very time, and the preſent Circumſtances of our Kingdom, were

foretold

foretold at the Birth of the firſt King we ever had; who was of the preſent Royal Family. How ſo, ſays I? Why, ſays he, before we had any King, we had a very good old Man, who lived retired in a Cave by the Sea; and to him, every body under their Difficulties, repaired for Advice. This old Man happening to be very ill, every body was under great Affliction for fear they ſhould loſe him; when flocking to his Aſſiſtance, he told them, they need not fear his Death, till the Birth of a King, who ſhould reign fifteen hundred Years. At hearing this, all Perſons then preſent, apprehended that his Diſorder had turned his Brain; but he perſiſted in it, and recovered.

After a few Years, a great number of Perſons being about him, he told them, he muſt now depart; for that their King was born, and pointed to a ſucking Child a poor Woman had then in her Arms. It cauſed a great Wonder in his Audience, at the Thoughts of that poor Child's ever becoming a King; but he told them, it was ſo decreed; and further, that as he was to die the next Day, if they would gather all together, he would let them know what was to come in future times.

When they were met, the Woman and Child being amongſt them, he told them, that Child was their King; and that his Loins, ſhould produce them a Race of Kings for fifteen hundred Years;

Years; during which time, they ſhould be happily governed: But then a Female Inhabitant of the Skies, ſhould claim the Dominion; and together with the Kingdom, be utterly deſtroy'd; unleſs a Meſſenger from above, with a Crown in each Hand, ſhould procure her a Male of her own kind; and then the Kingdom ſhould remain for the like Number of Years to her Poſterity. Now, ſays he, the time will expire very ſoon, and as no one has been, or its believed will ever come with ſuch two Crowns; the Princeſs *Stygee*, tho' ſhe undoubtedly will try for it, has little Hopes of ſucceeding her Father; for her Couſin *Felbamko* pretends, as no Woman ever reigned with us, he is the right Heir, and will have the Kingdom. Pray, ſays I, what do you mean by an Inhabitant of the Air? O, ſays he, ſhe flies. And do moſt of your Country-Folks fly, ſays I? for I perceive you don't. No, ſays he, no one but the Princeſs *Stygee*. How comes that about, ſays I? Her Mother, when ſhe was with Child with her, ſays he, being one Day in a Wood near the Palace, and having ſtraggled from her Company, was attacked by a Man with a Graundee; who not knowing her, claſped her within his Graundee, and would have debauched her; but perceiving her Cries had brought ſome of her Servants to her Aſſiſtance, he quitted her, and went off: This Accident threw her into ſuch a Fright, that it was a long time before ſhe recovered;

covered; and then was delivered of a Daughter with the Graundee. My Friend, ſays I, your meeting with me will be a very happy Affair for your Kingdom. I am the Man the Princeſs expects; go back to the Princeſs, and let her and her Father know, I will be with them in ſix Days, and eſtabliſh his Dominions in the Princeſs.

The Fellow looked at me, thinking I joked, but never offered to ſtir a Foot. Why don't you go, ſays I? And for the good News you bear to the Princeſs, I'll ſee you ſhall be made one of the greateſt Men in *Norbon*; the Man ſmiled ſtill, but could not conceive I was in earneſt: I aſked him then how long he ſhould be in going to the Palace, he ſaid three Days at ſooneſt; deliver but your Meſſage right, ſays I, and I'll aſſure you it ſhall be the better for you. The Man ſeeing me look ſerious, did at length believe me, and promiſed he would obey me punctually; but he had not ſeen how I came to the place he met me at, for I had ordered my Bearers into the Wood with my Chair, before I ſhewed myſelf.

He arrived, as I afterwards found, at the Palace, the fourth Morning very early, and paſſing the Guard in a great Heat; with much ado, was introduced to the King, and diſcharged himſelf of my Meſſage. His Majeſty giving no credit to him, thought he had been mad; but he affirming it to be true, and telling the King at what

what a Diſtance I had knocked down his Companion, and made a great Hole in his Back, only with holding up a thing I had in my Hand, which made a great Noiſe; *Oniwheſke* ordered his Daughter to come before him, who having herſelf heard the Man's Report, and being very willing to believe it, with the King's Leave, deſired that the Meſſenger might be detained till the appointed Day, and taken care of; and that Preparation ſhould be made for the Reception of the Stranger, in caſe it ſhould be true.

The Noiſe of my coming, and my Errand, excited every one's Curioſity to ſee me arrive; and the Day being come, I hovered over the City a conſiderable time, to be ſure of grounding right. The King and his Daughter, on the Rumour of my appearing, came forth to view me, and receive me at my alighting. The People were collected into a large Square, on one Side of the Palace, and ſtanding in ſeveral Cluſters at different places; I judged where the King might ſeem moſt likely to be, and ordered my Bearers to alight there; but I happened upon the moſt unlucky Poſt, as it might have proved, and at the ſame time the moſt lucky, I could have found there; for I had ſcarce raiſed myſelf from my Chair, but *Felbamko* puſhing up to me thro' the Throng, and lifting up a large Club he held in his Hand, had certainly diſpatched me, if I had not

not, at the Inſtant, drawn a Piſtol from my Girdle, and ſhot him dead upon the Spot; inſomuch, that the Club which was then over my Head, fell gently down on my Shoulder.

I did not then know who it was I had killed; but for fear of a freſh Attempt, I drew out another Piſtol, and my Cutlaſs, and inquiring at which part of the Square the King was, I walked directly up to him, he not as yet knowing what had happened. His Majeſty, and his Daughter met me, and welcomed me into his Dominions. I fell at the King's Feet, telling him I brought a Meſſage, which I hoped would excuſe my entring his Majeſty's Dominions, without the Formality of obtaining his Leave.

When we came to the Palace, the King ordered ſome Refreſhments to be given me and my Servants; and then, that I ſhould be conducted to the Room of Audience.

The Report of *Felbamko*'s Death had reached the Palace before us, and that it was by my Hand; this greatly ſurprized the whole Court, but proved agreeable News to *Stygee*.

At my Entrance into the Room of Audience, the King was ſitting at the further End of it againſt the Wall, with his Daughter on his Right-hand; and a Seat was placed for me at his Left, but nearer to the middle of the Room ſide-ways, on which I was ordered to ſit down; there were abundance

abundance of the Courtiers preſent, and above me was a Seat ordered for one of them, who I found afterwards was one of the religious.

His Majeſty aſked me, aloud, how it happened, that the firſt Moment of my entring his Dominions, I ſhould dip my Hands in Blood, and that too, of one of his neareſt Relations.

I then got up to make my Anſwer; but his Majeſty ordering me to my Seat again, I told him, that as it was moſt certain, I knew no one Perſon in his Kingdom, ſo it could not be ſuppoſed I could have an ill Deſign againſt any one; eſpecially againſt that Royal Blood, into whoſe Hands I then came to render myſelf; but the Truth was, that what I had done was in Preſervation of my own Life; for that the Perſon ſlain had ruſhed thro' the Crowd upon me, with a great Club, intending to murther me; and that whilſt the Blow was over my Head, I killed him in ſuch Poſition, that by his Fall, the Club reſted on my Shoulder, but was then too weak to hurt me.

The King aſking if that was the real Caſe, ſeveral from the lower End of the Room ſaid, they were informed it was; and one in particular ſaid, he ſaw the Tranſaction, and I had declared it faithfully. Then ſays the King, you are acquitted. And now, what brings you hither? relate your Buſineſs.

" Great

" Great Sir, ſays I, it is my peculiar Happi-
" neſs, to be appointed by Providence as the
" Propoſer of a Marriage for the Princeſs *Stygee*
" your Daughter, with a potent neighbouring
" Monarch; having already been enabled to per-
" form things paſt belief for his Honour. Know
" then, great Sir, I am a Native of the North,
" and thro' infinite Perils and Hardſhips, at laſt
" arrived in the Dominions of *Georigetti*, where
" I have given Peace to his State, by the Death
" of the Uſurper *Harlokin*. I have juſt alſo
" conquered the Kingdom of Mount *Alkoe* for
" my Maſter, and am here come to make your
" Daughter an Offer of both Crowns, and alſo
" of all that is my Maſter's, with his Perſon in
" Marriage."

The old Prieſt then roſe, and ſaid, " May it
" pleaſe your Majeſty, we are almoſt right; but
" what has always ſtaggered me is, how the
" Perſon ſhould come; for the Meſſenger to us
" on this Errand, is to come from above. Now
" this Perſon has not the Graundee, and there-
" fore could not come from thence: As for the
" reſt, I underſtand the Prince, from whom he
" brings this Offer to your Daughter, has the
" Graundee; and ſo is a Male of her own kind:
" And I underſtand the two Kingdoms in his
" Poſſeſſion, to be the two Crowns in the Meſ-
" ſenger's Hands; but I ſay, what I ſtick at is,
" his coming from above."

What

What, ſays *Stygee*, did not you ſee him come? No, ſays he; O, ſays ſhe, he came in the Air, and was a long time over the City, before he deſcended. That's impoſſible, ſays the old Prieſt, for he is ſmooth like us. Indeed Sir, ſays ſhe, I ſaw him, and ſo did moſt of the Court. The King and Nobles, then atteſting this Truth; Sir, ſays the Prieſt to the King, it is compleated, and your Majeſty muſt do the reſt.

I little expected, ſays the King, to ſee this Day; and now, Daughter, as this Meſſage was deſigned for you, you only can anſwer it; but ſtill I muſt ſay, it ſurpaſſes my Comprehenſion, that in the Decree of Providence, it ſhould be ſo ordered, that the very Hand which brings the Accompliſhment of what has been ſo long ſince foretold us, ſhould, without Deſign, have firſt deſtroyed all that could have rendered the Marriage State uncomfortable to you.

Stygee then declared, ſhe ſubmitted to Fate, and her Father's Will.

I ſtayed here a Week, to view the Country and the Sea, which I heard was not far off. Here were many uſeful Beaſts, for Food and Burthen, Fowles alſo in Plenty, and Fiſh near the Sea Coaſts, and the People eat Fleſh; ſo that I thought myſelf amongſt Mankind again. I made all the Remarks the ſhortneſs of the time would allow, and then taking my Leave, departed.

I returned to the Colony, where I heard that the Little-landers had been on the Coaſt; but I not being there, or any Lading ready, they were gone away again. However, they had detained two of them. I was pleaſed with that, but ſorry they were returned empty.

I examined the Priſoners, and by giving them Liberty and good Uſage, they ſettled amongſt us; and the next Fleet that came, the Sailors to a Man were all my own, the Moment they could get to Shoar; this, tho' I thought it would have ſpoilt our Trade at firſt, brought the Iſlanders and me to the following Compromiſe, and upon this Occaſion. Their Ships, having lain on our Coaſts one whole Seaſon, for want of Hands to carry them back; I came to an Agreement with their Commanders, for they were all willing to return, that ſuch a Number of them, ſhould be left as Hoſtages with me, till the Return of a Number of my own Men, which I ſhould lend them to navigate their Ships home; and I ſent word to the Zaps, that as it might be beneficial to us both, to keep the Trade ſtill on foot; to prevent the like Inconveniencies for the future, I would buy their Shipping, paying for them in Metals; and agree to furniſh them yearly, with ſuch a Quantity of my Goods, at a ſtated Price; and would ſend them by my own People; which they approving, the Trade went on in a very

agreeable and profitable Manner; and we in time, built ſeveral new Veſſels of our own, and imployed abundance of Hands in the Trade, and had Plenty of Handicrafts-men of different Occupations, each of whom I obliged to keep three Natives under him, to be trained up in his Buſineſs.

CHAP. XXI.

A Diſcourſe on Marriage between Peter *and* Georigetti; Peter *propoſed* Stygee; *the King accepts it*; *relates his Tranſactions at* Norbon; *the Marriage is conſummated*; *Account of the Marriage Ceremony*; Peter *goes to* Norbon; *opens a free Trade to Mount* Alkoe; *gets Traders to ſettle at* Norbon; *convoys Cattle to Mount* Alkoe.

AT my Return to *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*, I went directly to the King, and giving him an Account of the Settlement, and my Proceedings thereon; he told me, his whole Kingdom would not be an Equivalent for the Services I had done him. I begged of him, to look on them in no other a light, than as flowing from my Duty; but, if when I ſhould be no more, he or his Children would be gracious to my Family, it was all I deſired.

This Father, ſays the King, I can undertake for myſelf; but who's to come after me, no body knows; for I ſhall never marry, no, *Yaccombourſe* has given me a Surfeit of Woman-kind; and unleſs the States will ſettle the Kingdom on you, to which I will conſent, it will probably be torn to pieces again, by different Competitors; for I am the laſt of the Line of *Begſurbeck*, and of all the

the Blood Royal: And indeed, who ſo proper to maintain it flouriſhing, as he who has brought it to the preſent Perfection.

Great Sir, ſays I, my Ambition riſes no higher, than to abound in good Deeds whilſt I live, and to perfect my Children in the ſame Principle; and this, I hope, will intitle them to a Support, when I am gone: But, ſays I, why is your Majeſty ſo averſe from Marriage, merely on account of a Woman you could not expect to be true to you? Not expect it, ſays he? what ſtronger Tie upon Earth could ſhe have had to be true, than my Affection, and all that my Kingdom could afford her? Weak things all, Sir, ſays I. Why, what could ſhe have had, ſays he, in ſome Warmth? Honour, Sir, ſays I, and Virtue, both which ſhe abandoned to become yours; and thoſe once loſt, how could you expect her to be true? You are too hard for me, Father, ſays he; but they are all alike, and I don't believe there's a Grain of Honour in any of them. In any of them like *Yaccombourſe*, I admit Sir, ſays I, but think not ſo of others; for no part of our Species abounds more with it, or is more tender of it, than a good Woman; and take my word for it, Sir, there is more real Sincerity in an ordinary Wife, than in the moſt extraordinary Miſtreſs. We are all biaſſed naturally by Intereſt; and as there can be but one real Intereſt between the Man and Wife, ſo the

Intereſt of a Miſtreſs is, and ever will be, only to accommodate herſelf; for its all one to her with whom ſhe engages, ſo ſhe can raiſe but the Market by a Change: Now, if your Majeſty could find an agreeable and virtuous Wife, one deſerving of your Royal Perſon and Bed, and perhaps with a Kingdom for her Dowry; a Partner fit to ſhare your Cares, as well as Glory; would it not be a great Pleaſure to you, to be poſſeſſed of ſuch a Mate? And to ſee Heirs ariſing under your Joint-Tuition, to convey down your Royal Blood to the lateſt Poſterity? Would not this I ſay, be a grateful Reflection to you, in your declining Years?

Truly Father, ſays the King, as you have painted it, the Proſpect could not fail to pleaſe; and under the Circumſtances you have put it, it would meet my Approbation; but where is ſuch a thing, as a Woman of this Character to be found? I fear only in the Imagination.

Sir, ſays I, after a ſeeming Muſe for ſome time, what ſhould you think of *Oniwheſke*, the King of *Norbon*'s Daughter; he has but that one Child I hear? Dear Father have done, ſays his Majeſty; to what Purpoſe ſhould you mention her? We but barely know there is ſuch a State, we have never had an Intercourſe; and beſides, as you ſay he has but one Child, can you ſuppoſe ſhe will ever marry, to leave ſo fine a Kingdom, and live

live here? But Sir, ſays I, now we are ſuppoſing, ſuppoſe ſhe ſhould, with her Father's Conſent, be willing to marry you; would you have her for your Queen? To make any doubt of that Father, ſays he, is almoſt to ſuppoſe me a Fool. Then Sir, ſays I, her Father has conſented, and ſhe too; and if I durſt have preſumed ſo far, or had known your Mind ſooner, ſhe would, I believe, have ventured with me, to have become yours; but you might have ſlighted her, and crown'd Heads are not to be trifled with; but ſince you are pleaſed to ſhew your Approbation of it, I can aſſure you, Sir, her Perſon will yield to none in your Majeſty's Dominions: For Sir, I have been there, and have ſeen her, and ſhe is your own, and her Kingdom too, upon Demand.

Father, ſays the King, looking earneſtly at me; I have been frequently, ſince I knew you firſt, in doubt of my own Exiſtence; my Life ſeems a Dream to me; for if Exiſtence is to be judged of by one's Faculties only, I have been in ſuch a Deluſion of them ever ſince, that as I find myſelf unable to judge with Certainty of any other thing, ſo I am ſubject to doubt, whether I really exiſt. Are theſe things poſſible that you tell me, Father?

I then told him the whole Affair, and adviſed him by all means to accept the Offer, and marry the Princeſs out of Hand.

HisMajeſty, when I had brought him thoroughly to believe me, was as eager to conſummate the Marriage, as I was to have him: But then, whether he ſhould go to her, or ſhe come to him was the Queſtion. I told him, it was a thing unuſual, for a Sovereign to quit his own Dominions for a Wife; but would adviſe an Embaſſy to her Father, with Notice, that his Majeſty would meet and eſpouſe her, on the Frontiers of the two Kingdoms.

The Embaſſadors returning, with an Appointment of time and place; it was not above a Month, before I had ſettled *Stygee* on the Thrones of *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti* and Mount *Alkoe*, with the Reverſion of the Kingdom of *Norbon*, without a Competitor.

I ſhall here give you an Account of the Marriage Ceremony. The King being arrived on the Borders; *Stygee*, who had waited but a few Hours at the laſt Village in *Norbon*, advanced to his Majeſty on the very Diviſion, as they called it, of the two Kingdoms; a Line being drawn, to expreſs the Bounds of each. The King and *Stygee*, having talked apart from the Company a little Space, each ſtanding Hand in Hand, on their own reſpective Ground: The chief Ragam advanced, and began the Ceremony.

He firſt aſked each Party aloud, if he and ſhe were willing to be united in Body and Affections, and would engage to continue ſo their whole Lives;

Lives; to which, each Party having anſwered aloud in the Affirmative; ſhew me then a Token, ſays he; and immediately each expanding the right Side of their Graundees, laid it upon the other's left Side, ſo that they appeared then but as one Body, ſtanding Hand in Hand, incaſed round with the Graundee. The Ragam then having diſcanted upon the Duties of Marriage, concluded the Ceremony, with wiſhing them as Fruitful as *Perigene* and *Philella*. So ſoon as it was over, and the Gripſacks and Voices had finiſhed an Epithalamium, the Bride and Bridegroom taking Wing, were conducted to *Brandleguarp*, amidſt the Acclamations of an infinite Number of *Georigetti*'s Subjects.

The King had made vaſt Preparations for the Reception of the Princeſs *Stygee*, and nothing was to be heard or ſeen but Feaſtings and Rejoicing for many Days; and his Majeſty afterwards aſſured me, of his intire Satisfaction in my Choice of his Bride; without whom he confeſſed, that notwithſtanding the many other Bleſſings I had procured him, his Happineſs muſt have been incompleat.

Intending another Flight to *Norbon*, I was charged with the King and Queen's Compliments to *Oniwheſke*; which having executed, I opened a free Trade to Mount *Alkoe*; and hearing that ſmall Veſſels came frequently on the *Norboneſe* Coaſt to carry off the Iron, and other Metal

from thence unwrought; and paid part of their Return in wrought Metals: I ordered ſome of the next that came, to be ſtopped, and brought to me; and the Day before I had fixed for my Departure, Notice was ſent, that twelve of thoſe Traders were ſtopped, and in Cuſtody at the Sea-ſide; I longed to ſee them, but then conſidering that it would take up more time to bring them to *Apſilo* the Capital, where I was, than I ſhould take in going to them, and returning; I reſolved to go and examine them myſelf.

They told me, they traded with ſmall Veſſels to *Norbon* for Metals; which they carried home, and wrought great part of it themſelves, ſending it to, and diſperſing it in ſeveral Iſlands at a Diſtance; and alſo ſold the unwrought to ſeveral People, who carried it they knew not whither, in great Ships. They ſaid, they kept abundance of Hands at work in the Trade. I aſked if their Artificers wrought it for their own Profit, or their Maſters. They told me for Maſters, themſelves being all Slaves. And are you all Slaves, ſays I? They told me yes, all but one, pointing to him. I then ordered him to be ſecured and removed; and told them, if they would procure ſome Hands to ſettle at *Norbon* and Mount *Alkoe*, they ſhould all be made free, have Lands aſſigned them, and have other great Privileges; and I did not doubt in time, would become the richeſt Men in the Country; for I underſtood by them, they

they were acquainted with the Uſe of Money. I aſked them, what other Commodities they brought to *Norbon* in Exchange. They ſaid, Cloaths for the People, both what they received in Exchange from others who bought their Iron, and ſome of a coarſer ſort of their own making. I found in my Diſcourſe I had with them, that out of my eleven Men, there were Perſons of four different Occupations; ſo I promiſed thoſe who would ſtay with me, their Freedoms, good Houſes, and other Rewards; and ſending three Hands home with the Veſſel, and a full Freight, according to the Value of the Cargoe they brought; I ordered them to engage as many as they could of their Countrymen of diſtinct Trades, to come and ſettle with me; and to be ſure if they had any Grain, Corn, Roots, Plants, or Seeds, uſually eaten for Food, to bring all they could get with them, and they ſhould have good Returns for them; and as to thoſe good Hands that ſettled here, they ſhould be allowed all Materials, to work for their own Profit the firſt Year; and after that, they ſhould alſo work for themſelves, allowing the King one tenth of the clear Profit.——This took ſo far with them, that it was with the utmoſt Difficulty I got any of them to carry the Ship back, for fear they ſhould not be able to return.

Before I parted from them, I aſſigned the eight who were left, all proper Conveniencies, and

and recommended them to the King's Protection; and I ordered the Owner then in Cuſtody, to be conducted to Mount *Alkoe*, and from thence to *Brandleguarp*; where treating him kindly, and giving him Liberty, I made my proper uſe of him.

The King having lent me a Convoy to conduct my Priſoner, and given me a Licence for as many Cattle of the ſorts I choſe, as I pleaſed to drive to *Georigetti*'s Dominions; I made them drive a great Number of Sheep, of the fineſt Wool I ever ſaw, and very large alſo; a great Number of Creatures not unlike an Aſs for Shape, but with two upright Horns and ſhort Ears, which gave abundance of rich Milk; and alſo ſome Swine. All theſe were drove to, and diſtributed at my new Colony; where I let them remain, till I had provided a proper Receptacle for them at *Doorpt Swangeanti*, near the Woods; when I brought many over the black Mountain, and diſtributed there, with Directions how to manage them; and in about ſeven Years time, we held a little Beaſt Market near *Brandleguarp*, twice a Year, where the ſpare Cattle were brought up, and preſerved in Salt till the next Market; for I had ſome Years before, made large Salt Works near the Sea, at Mount *Alkoe*; which imployed abundance of Hands, and was now become a conſiderable Trade.

We

We had Iron, Copper, and Silver Money, which went very current; and had Butter and Cheeſe from the Farms near the Woods, as plenty as we had the Fruits before; great Numbers of Families having ſettled there; and there was ſcarce a Family but was of ſome Occupation or other.

By the Accounts I received from the Mines, from time to time, it was prodigious to hear, what vaſt Quantities of Metals were prepared in one Year now, by little above one third of the Hands that were uſually imployed in them before; for now the Mens Ambition was, to leave a good Week's Work done at their return, for an Example to thoſe who were coming; and the Overſeers told me, they would ſing and work, with the greateſt Delight imaginable, whilſt they pleaſed themſelves with telling one another, how they intended to ſpend the next fourteen Days.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Peter *looking over his Books finds a* Latin *Bible; ſets about a Tranſlation; teaches ſome of the Ragams Letters; ſets up a Paper Manufacture; makes the Ragams read the Bible; the Ragams teach others to read and write; a Fair kept at the black Mountain;* Peter's *Reflection on the* Swangeantines.

ALL things being now ſo ſettled, that they would go on of themſelves; and having no further direct View in my Head, I ſpent ſome time with my Wife; and looking over my Books one Day to divert myſelf, with the greateſt Joy imaginable, I found that the Bible I had taken to be in the *Portugueſe* Tongue, was a *Latin* one. It was many Years ſince I had thought of that Language, but on this Occaſion, by Force of Memory and Recollection, and with ſome Attention, Conſideration, and Practice, I found it return to me in ſo plentiful a manner, that I fully reſolved to tranſlate my Bible into the *Swangeantine* Tongue.

I ſent directly for *Laſmeel* to be my Amanuenſis; and to work we went upon the Tranſlation.

We began at the Creation, and deſcending to the Flood, went on to the *Jewiſh* Captivity in *Egypt*,

Egypt, and Deliverence by *Moſes*; leaving out the Genealogies, and all the *Jewiſh* Ceremonies and Laws, except the ten Commandments. I tranſlated the Books of *Samuel* and *Kings*, down to the *Babiloniſh* Captivity. I then tranſlated ſuch parts of the Prophets, as were neceſſary to introduce the Meſſiah, and diſcover him; the Book of *Pſalms*, *Job*, and the *Proverbs*, and with the utmoſt Impatience haſted to the New Teſtament. But then conſidering that when I had done, as only *Laſmeel* and myſelf could read it, in caſe of our Deaths, the Tranſlation muſt die with us; I choſe out ſix of the junior Ragams, and two of the elder, to learn Letters; and in leſs than twelve Months, I had brought them all to read mine and *Laſmeel*'s Writing perfectly well.

I inſtructed theſe Ragams at ſpare Hours, whilſt I went on with my Tranſlation, but finding my Paper grow low, having had a great Supply of courſiſh Linnen, and a ſort of Callicoes from the Iſles, in return for our Metals; I ſet up a Manufactory from that, and ſome Gums of the Trees, which we boiled with it to a Pulp in Iron Pans, and beating it to pieces, made a uſeful Paper, which would bear Ink tolerably. But I could find nothing to make Ink of, tho' I ſent over all the Country, to ſearch for every Herb and Fruit not commonly uſed; till at laſt I found

found an Herb and Flower on it, which if taken before the Flower faded, would by boiling thoroughly become blew; this, by ſtill more boiling in a Copper Pan, till it was dry and burnt hard to the Bottom, in ſome meaſure anſwered my Purpoſe, and I fixed upon it, as the beſt I could obtain from all my Experiments.

When the Ragams were Maſters of their Pens, I ſet ſix of them to copy what *Laſmeel* had finiſhed, and the other two to teach their Brethren; and in two Years time, by a pretty conſtant Application, for I made them tranſcribe it perfectly fair and intelligible, we finiſhed our Tranſlation, and two fair Copies.

I then ordering the Ragams to read a Portion of it to the People conſtantly in the Mouch; they, from the Novelty of the Story, at firſt grew ſo exceeding fond of it, that upon the proper Expoſitions of it, I taught the Ragams afterwards to make, they began to apply it ſeriouſly to religious Purpoſes.

My writing Ragams were very fond of their Knowledge of Letters; and Trade and Commerce now increaſing, which put every one more or leſs in want of the ſame Knowledge; they made a great Profit of it, by inſtructing all who applied to them. This Increaſe of Writing, neceſſarily provided a Maintenance for ſeveral Perſons who travelled to *Norbon* for Quills, and ſold them

them to the *Swangeantines* at extravagant Rates; till the *Norboneſe* hearing that, brought them themſelves to the Foot of the Mountain, where the *Swangeantines* bought them, as they did ſeveral other Commodities, which one Country had, and the other wanted, eſpecially Iron Wares of almoſt every Denomination; ſo that the Mountain being ſo exceſſive high, was the Barrier; for the *Norboneſe* finding that Difficulty in aſcending and deſcending, which the *Swangeantines* with their Graundees did not; there was a conſtant Market of Buyers and Sellers on the Mount *Alkoe* Side of the black Mountain; which by Degrees grew the general Mart of the three Kingdoms.

I have often reflected with myſelf, and have been amazed to think, that ſo ingenious and induſtrious a People, as the *Swangeantines* have ſince appeared to be; and who till I came amongſt them, had nothing more than bare Food, and a Hole to lie in, in a barren rocky Country, and then ſeemed to deſire only what they had; ſhould in ten Years time, be ſupplied not only with the Conveniencies, but Superfluities of Life; and that they ſhould then become ſo fond of them, as rather willingly to part with Life itſelf, than be reduced to the State I found them in. And I have as often on this Occaſion reflected on the Goodneſs of Providence, in

rendring

rendring one part of Mankind eaſy under the Abſence of ſuch Comforts, as others could not reſt without; and have made it a great Argument for my Aſſent to well-atteſted Truths above my Comprehenſion. For, ſays I, to have affirmed at my firſt coming, either that theſe things could have been made at all, or when done could have been of any additional Benefit to theſe People, would have been ſo far beyond their Imaginations, that the Reporter of ſo plain a Truth, as they now find it, would have been looked upon as a Madman or an Impoſter: But by opening their Views by little and little, and ſhewing them the Dependance of one thing upon another; he that ſhould now affirm the Inutility of them, would be obſerved in a much worſe Light. And yet, without any Imbelliſhments of Art, how did this ſo great a People live under the Protection of Providence? Let us firſt view them at a vaſt Diſtance from any ſort of Suſtenance, yet from the Help of the Graundee, that Diſtance was but a Step to them. They were forced to inhabit the Rocks, from an utter Incapacity of providing Shelter elſe where, having no Tool that would either cut down Timber for an Habitation, or dig up the Earth for a Fence, or Materials to make one: But they had a Liquor that would diſſolve the Rock itſelf into Habitations. They had neither Beaſt or Fiſh, for Food or Burthen:

Burthen: But they had Fruits equivalent to both, of the ſame Reliſh, and as wholeſome without ſhedding Blood. Their Fruits were dangerous, till they had fermented in a boiling Heat; and they had neither the Sun, or any Fire, or the Knowledge how to propagate or continue it. But they had their hot Springs always boiling, without their Care or Concern. They had neither the Skins of Beaſts, the original Cloathing, or any other artificial Covering from the Weather; but they were born with that warm Cloathing the Graundee, which being of a conſiderable Denſity, and full of Veins flowing with warm Blood, not only defended their Fleſh from all outward Injuries, but was a moſt ſoft, comely, and warm Dreſs to the Body. They lived moſtly in the dark Rock, having leſs Difference of Light with the Change of Seaſons, than other People have: But either by Cuſtom or Make, more Light than what Providence has ſent them in the Sweecoe, is diſagreeable: So that where little is to be obtained, Providence by confining the Capacity, can give Content with that; and where apparent Wants are, we may ſee by theſe People, how careful Providence is to ſupply them; for neither the Graundee, the Sweecoes, or their Springs, are to be found where thoſe Neceſſaries can be ſupplied by other means.

Amongſt my other Conſiderations, I have often thought, that if I had gone to the Top of the

the black Mountains Northward of *Brandle-guarp*, in the very lighteſt time, I might have ſeen the Sun; but theſe Mountains were ſo elevated, that our lighteſt time was only the gilded Glimmering of their Tops, having never ſeen ſo much Light on them, as totally to eclipſe all the Stars; of which we had always the ſame in view, but in different Poſitions.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Peter's *Children provided for*; Youwarkee's *Death*; *how the King and Queen ſpend their time*; Peter *grows melancholy*; *wants to get to* England; *contrives Means*; *is taken up at Sea.*

I Had now been at *Brandleguarp* ten Years, and my Children were all provided for by the King, but *Dickey*, as faſt as they were qualified for Imployment; and ſuch as were fit for it were married off to the beſt Alliances in the Country; ſo that I had only to ſit down, and ſee every thing I had put my Hand to proſper, and not an evil Eye in the three Kingdoms caſt at me: But about my eleventh or twelfth Year, my Wife falling into a lingering Diſorder, at the End of two Years, it carried her off. This was the firſt real Affliction I had ſuffered for many Years, and ſo ſoured my Temper, that I became fit for nothing, and it was painful to me even to think of Buſineſs.

The King's Marriage had produced four Children, three Sons and a Daughter; which he would frequently tell me were mine.

Old *Oniwheſke* was dead, and the King and Queen divided their whole time equally, between *Brandleguarp* and *Apſilo*: But he was Building a Palace

Palace at my new Colony; which by this time was grown to a vaſt City, and was called *Stygena* in Compliment to the Queen; and this new Palace was deſigned to receive the Court one third of the Year, as it lay almoſt at equal Diſtance between both his other Palaces. This Method, which his Majeſty took at my Perſuaſion on the Death of *Oniwheſke*, tho' it went againſt the Grain at firſt, was now grown ſo habitual to him, and he ſaw his own Intereſt ſo much in it, in the Love and Eſteem it procured him from the People, that at laſt he wanted no Spur to it.

My Melancholy for the Death of my Wife, which I hoped time would wear off, rather gained ground upon me; and tho' I was as much regarded as ever by the whole Court, yet it grew troubleſome to me, even to be aſked my Advice; and it not only ſurprized thoſe about me, but even myſelf, to ſee the ſame Genius, without any viſible natural Decay, in ſo ſhort a time, from the moſt ſprightly and enterprizing, become the moſt phlegmatick and unactive.

My Longings after my Native Country, ever ſince my Wife's Death, redoubled upon me; and I had formed ſeveral Schemes of getting thither; as firſt, I had formed a Project of going off by the Iſlands, as I had ſo many ſmall Veſſels at Command there, and to get into the main Ocean, and try my Fortune that way; but upon Inquiry,

Inquiry, I found that my Veſſels could not get to Sea or elſewhere, but to the Zaps Iſlands, by reaſon of the many Rocks and Sand-banks which would oppoſe me, unleſs I went thro' the Zaps Country; which in the Light they had reaſon to view me, I was afraid to do. Then I had Thoughts of going from the Coaſt of *Norbon*; but that muſt have been in one of the foreign Veſſels, and they coming from a quite different Quarter than I muſt go, in all Probability if I had put to Sea any way they were unacquainted with, they having no Compaſs, we muſt have periſhed; for the more I grew by Degrees acquainted with the Situation of *Doorpt Swangeanti*, the ſtronger were my Conjectures, that my neareſt Continent muſt be the Southern Coaſt of *America*; but ſtill it was only Conjecture. At length being tired and uneaſy, I reſolved as I was accuſtomed to Flight, and loved it; I would take a Turn for ſome Days, carry me where it would, I ſhould certainly light on ſome Land, whence at worſt I could but come back again. I then went to ſee if my Chair, Board, and Ropes were ſound, for I had not uſed them for ſeveral Years paſt; but I found them all ſo crazy, I durſt not venture in them; which Diſappointment put off my Journey for ſome time. However, as I had ſtill the Thought remaining, it put me on ſeeking ſome other Method to put it in Practice: So I contrived the Poles from

which

which you took me, being a ſort of hollow Cane the *Swangeantines* make their Spears of, but exceeding ſtrong and ſpringy; which interwoven with ſmall Cords, were my Seat, and were much lighter than my Chair; and theſe buoyed me up when your Goodneſs relieved me. I had taken Mount *Alkoe* Bearers, as I knew I muſt come to a Country of more Light; and I now find, if I had not fallen, I muſt ſoon have reached Land, if we could have held out; for we were come too far to think of returning, without a reſting place: And what will become of my poor Bearers, I dread to think, if they attempted to return, they muſt have dropt; for they had complained all the laſt Day and Night, and had ſhifted very often. If in your Hiſtory you think fit to carry down the Life of a poor old Man any further, you will as well know what to ſay of me, as I can tell you; and I hope what I have hitherto ſaid, will in ſome meaſure recompence both your Expence and Labour.

FINIS.

A TABLE OF THE Names of Perſons and Things, Mentioned in the Two Volumes.

A.

ABB, A Room.
Apſillo, Capital of *Norbon*.
Arco, A Man who committed the firſt Murder.
Arndrumſtake, *Pendlehamby*'s Colambat.
Arkoe, Water ſurrounded with Wood.

B.

Barbarſa, *Georigetti*'s Favourite.
Barkatt, A Huſband.
Barras, A Leathern Apron, or Flap behind.

Baſh, A Valet de Chambre.
Battingdrigg, The Name of an Arkoe.
Begſurbeck, An old King of *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*.
Born Iſles, Iſlands to the right Hand.
Boſkee, A very grand Room, or Saloon.
Bott, A Gourd.
Bougee, Lie down.
Brandleguarp, Chief City of *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*.

C.

Calentar, A Doctor, or Surgeon.
Cluff, A Captain.
Colamb, A Governor.
Colambat, A Government.
Colapet, A Bag for Proviſion.
Collwarr, God.
Coovett, A Manſion-Houſe, or Seat.
Craſhdoorpt, *Quangrallort*'s Colambat, or Country of the Slit.
Craſhee, Slit.
Crullmott, A Fruit taſting like a Fowl.

D.

David, *Peter*'s fourth Son.
Doorpt Swangeanti, The Land of Flight.
Dorrs, A ſort of Apples.
Doſſee, A ſoft thing.

E.

Emina, A Rock.

F.

Felbamko, *Oniwheſke*'s Nephew.
Filgay, A Freeman.
Filus, A Rib of the Graundee.

G.

Gadſi, Governor of Mount *Alkee*.
Gauingrunt, A revolted Town in the Weſt.
Gawrey, A Woman.
Georigetti, King of *Saſs Doorpi Swangeanti*.
Glaulepzee, An *African* who eſcaped with *Peter*.
Glumm, A Man.
Glumm Boſs, A young Man.
Goppo, A Father in Law.
Gorpell, An Enſign.
Gowren, Women.
Graundee, The Glumms Wings and Dreſs.
Gripſack, A Trumpet.
Grandevolet, *Peter*'s Arkoe.
Gume, The Leather between the Filus's of the Graundee.

H.

Hallycarnie, *Youwarkee*'s Sister, also her second Daughter.
Harlokin, Prince of the Rebels.
Hoximo, A place to bury the Dead.
Hunkum, Marriage.

I.

Jahamel, The King's Sister.
Jemmy, *Peter*'s second Son.
I. O, The chief Ragam.

L.

Lallie, First King of *Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti*.
Laſk, A Slave.
Laſkmett, Slavery.
Laſmeel, *Peter*'s Scholar.

M.

Maleck, *Peter*'s Man from Mount *Alkoe*.
Mindrack, The Devil.
Mouch, A Church.
Moucheratt, An Aſſembly of the States
Mount Alkoe, A Kingdom taking Name from a burning Mountain.

Naſgig,

N.

Naſgig, A common Soldier, made a General at the Requeſt of *Peter*.

Nicor, A Creature of *Barbarſa*, the King's Favourite.

Norbon, The Name of the North Country.

Normnbdſgrſutt, Ancient Name of *Youwarkee*'s Country.

O.

Oniwheſke, King of *Norbon*.

Ors clam gee, Here am I.

P.

Padſi, A Fruit taſting like Fiſh.

Palang, A Town.

Parky, Sweet.

Patty, *Peter*'s eldeſt Daughter, alſo his firſt Wife.

Pedro, *Peter*'s eldeſt Son.

Peter, The Author.

Pendlehamby, *Youwarkee*'s Father, the Colamb of *Arndrumſtake*.

Perigene, The firſt born Man.

Philella, The firſt born Woman.

Puly, An Image.
Praave, Modeſt.

Q.

Quangrallort, *Youwarkee*'s Brother, Colamb of *Craſhdoorpt*.
Quilly, *Peter*'s Baſh.

R.

Ragam, A Prieſt.
Razy, Mighty.
Richard, *Peter*'s fifth Son.
Roppin, Marmalade.
Roſſig, *Quangrallort*'s Companion.

S.

Sarah, *Peter*'s youngeſt Daughter.
Saſs Doorpt Swangeanti, *Peter*'s new Name given to *Georigetti*'s Dominions.
Slip the Graundee, Drawing the Graundee tight to the Body, by a running Nooſe on a Line.
Stapps, Minutes.
Stygee, *Oniwheſke*'s Daughter,
Sweecoe, An Inſect, giving a ſtrong Light in the Dark.

Sweecoan,

Sweecoan, A Flight with Sweecoes.
Swangean, Flight.

T.

Telamine, A Woman, whoſe Huſband committed the firſt Murder.
Tommy, *Peter*'s ſecond Son.

Y.

Yaccombourſe, The King's Miſtreſs.
Yacom, A Man-child.
Youk, Capital of the Weſt.
Youwarkee, *Peter*'s Wife.

Z.

Zaps, Lords.

THE END.

Books printed for R. Dodsley, at *Tully's Head, Pallmall.*

I. THE Microſcope made eaſy: or the Nature, Uſes, and magnifying Powers of the beſt kinds of Microſcopes deſcribed, calculated, and explained: For the Inſtruction of ſuch, particularly, as deſire to ſearch into the Wonders of the Minute Creation, tho' they are not acquainted with Opticks. Together with full Directions how to prepare, apply, examine, and preſerve all ſorts of Objects, and proper Cautions to be obſerved in viewing them. 2. An Account of what ſurprizing Diſcoveries have been already made by the Microſcope; with uſeful Reflections on them. And alſo a great Variety of new Experiments and Obſervations, pointing out many uncommon Subjects for the Examination of the Curious. The third Edition. By *Henry Baker*, F.R.S. and Member of the Society of Antiquaries, in *London*. The whole illuſtrated with curious and uſeful Copper-Plates. In 8vo. Price 5 *s.* bound.

II. An Attempt towards a natural Hiſtory of the Polype. In a Letter to *Martin Folkes*, Eſq; Preſident of the Royal Society. Deſcribing their different Species; the Places where to ſeek, and how to find them; their wonderful Production and Increaſe; the Form, Structure, and Uſe of their ſeveral Parts; and the manner they catch their Prey. With an Account of their amazing Reproduction, after being cut in Pieces; of the beſt Methods to perform that Operation, and of the Time requiſite to perfect the ſeveral Parts after being divided. Likewiſe a Courſe of real Experiments, performed by cutting theſe Creatures in every way that can be eaſily contrived; ſhewing the daily Progreſs of each Part towards becoming a perfect Polype. The whole explained every where by great Numbers of proper Figures, and intermixed throughout with Variety of Obſervations and Experiments. In Octavo, Price 4 *s.* 6 *d.*

III

III. Leiſure Hours Amuſements for Town and Country. Being a ſelect Collection of the moſt humourous and diverting Stories, which are diſperſed in the Writings of the beſt *Engliſh* Authors. To which is now added, a Collection of Characters; copied from the original Drawings of the greateſt Maſters. The 2d Edit. with Addit. 2 Vols. 12^mo^. Pr. bound 6*s*.

IV. The *Decameron*, or one hundred ingenious and diverting Novels; written originally in *Italian* by *John Boccace*, newly tranſlated into *Engliſh* by a Gentleman. Price 6*s*. in Octavo.

N. B. Theſe beautiful Stories are divided into ten Days Entertainment, ten Novels for each Day. 1. On various Subjects. 2. and 3. Great Troubles and perplexed Adventures crowned with Succeſs. 4. Such Amours and Love Adventures, as have had an unfortunate Concluſion. 5. Amours that have ended happily. 6. Subjects of Wit and Humour. 7. and 8. Stratagems that Women have contrived to deceive their Huſbands. 9. Miſcellaneous Novels. 10. Gallant or generous Actions done for the ſake of a Miſtreſs, a Friend, *&c*.

V. *Circe:* or Dialogues between *Ulyſſes* and his Followers, after their Transformation into Brutes in *Circe*'s Iſland. Wherein *Ulyſſes* uſes many Arguments to prevail on them to re-aſſume the human Shape again; but which every one, for Reaſons which he gives peculiar to himſelf, obſtinately refuſes; and declares that he will by no means quit his preſent Condition to turn Man again. The Deſign of the Author herein being, to ſhew how thoſe Evils may be avoided, which, from a wrong Choice, Man brings upon himſelf. Tranſlated from the *Italian* of *John Baptiſt Gelli*, of the Academy of *Florence*. In Octavo, Price 4*s*.

VI. *Les Avantures de Telemaque Fils D'Ulyſſe*, in two neat Pocket Volumes, printed on a ſuperfine Writing Paper, and new Elziver Letter, with a compleat Set of Cuts, 26 in Number, engraved by the beſt Maſters, from thoſe fine Deſigns in the *Dutch* Edition in Quarto. This is the moſt beautiful

ſmall

ſmall Edition of *Telemaque*, that has yet been printed; and is a very handſome Preſent for young Gentlemen or Ladies at School. Price bound 12*s*.

VII. *Philomel:* Being a ſmall Collection of *only* the beſt *Engliſh* Songs. Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

VIII. A new Tranſlation of *Don Quixote*, by the late *Charles Jarvis*, Eſq; in two Volumes Quarto, humourouſly illuſtrated by 69 fine Copper-Plates, engraved by *Vandergucht*, from the Deſigns of *Vanderbank*; with a curious Preface and Notes by the Tranſlator, an Account of the Cuts by Dr. *Oldfield*; and the Life of *Cervantes*, written at the Requeſt of the Earl of *Granville*, by *Don Gregorio Meyens & Siſcar*, Library Keeper to the King of *Spain*. Price bound 2*l*. 10*s*. The ſame in two Volumes Octavo, with good Copies of the Cuts, Price 12*s*.

IX. The Preceptor: containing a general Courſe of Education. Wherein the firſt Principles of polite Learning are laid down in a way moſt ſuitable for trying the Genius, and advancing the Inſtruction of Youth. In twelve Parts, *viz.* 1. On Reading, Speaking, and writing Letters. 2. On Geometry. 3. On Geography and Aſtronomy. 4. On Chronology and Hiſtory. 5. On Rhetorick and Poetry. 6. On Drawing. 7. On Logick. 8. On natural Hiſtory. 9. On Ethics, or Morality. 10. On Trade and Commerce. 11. On Laws and Government. 12. On human Life and Manners. Illuſtrated with uſeful Cuts and Maps. In 2 Vols. 8vo. Price bound 12*s*.

N. B. The ſeveral Parts of this Compendium of polite Learning, are executed in ſo judicious a manner, as renders this Work not only uſeful and neceſſary in Schools, but of ſervice alſo to whoever would retrieve or improve what they may have formerly learned there; or acquire what has been hitherto ſeldom there taught.

X. The Inſtitution of a Prince, or an Introduction to the Science of Politicks. Proper for Nobelmen, Senators, and all who would underſtand minutely the Nature of Government, and the Art of managing publick

publick Buſineſs in all its Branches. In 2 Vol. Octavo, Price 8*s*.

XI. *Plato Redivivus*, or Dialogues concerning Government. Wherein, by Obſervations drawn from other Kingdoms and States, both ancient and modern, an Endeavour is uſed to diſcover the preſent politick Diſtemper of our own, with the Cauſes and Remedies. By the Hon. *Henry Neville*. In 12°. Price 2*s*. 6*d*.

XII. Letters of the Hon. *Algernon Sidney*, to the Hon. *Henry Savile*, Ambaſſador in *France* in the Year 1679. In Octavo, Price 2*s*. 6*d*.

XIII. *The Lady's new Year's Gift*, or Advice to a Daughter. Under the following Heads, *viz*. Religion, Huſband, Houſe, Family and Children, Behaviour and Converſation, Friendſhip, Cenſure, Vanity and Affectation, Pride, Diverſions. By the Right Hon. *George* Lord *Saville*, late Marquis and Earl of *Hallifax*.

XIV. *Adam*'s Luxury, and *Eve*'s Cookery; or the Kitchen Garden diſplay'd: In two Parts, the firſt giving Directions to the moſt unexperienced for the Culture; and the ſecond for the proper dreſſing of the ſeveral different Productions of a Kitchen Garden. In 12°. Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

XV. Odes of *Pindar*, with ſeveral other Pieces in Proſe and Verſe, tranſlated from the *Greek*. To which is prefixed a Diſſertation on the *Olympick* Games. By *Gilbert Weſt*, Eſq; L. L. D. Handſomely printed in one Vol. Quarto.

XVI. A Collection of Poems, by ſeveral Hands. In three neat Pocket Volumes.

XVII. The Æneid of *Virgil*, tranſlated by the Rev^d. Mr. *Pitt*. In 2 Vol. 12°.

XVIII. An Eſſay on Mr. *Pope*'s Odyſſey, in five Dialogues. By the Rev^d. Mr. *Spence*. In Duodecimo, Price 3*s*.

XIX. The Pleaſures of Imagination, a Poem. In three Books. By *Mark Akinſide*, M. D. In Quarto or Octavo.

XX. Odes on ſeveral Subjects, by the Rev^d. Mr. *Joſeph Warton*. In Quarto, Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

XXI. A Collection of old Plays, from the earlieſt Accounts of the *Engliſh* Stage, to the Death of *Charles* the Firſt. Selected according to the Order of Time, from our beſt Dramatick Authors, ſerving to ſhew the gradual Improvement of our Language, and the Taſte, Humours, and Manners of the Times in which they were written. In 12 Pocket Vol. Price *2l. 2s.*

N. B. To each Play is prefix'd (where any Materials were to be had) a brief Account of the Life and Writings of its Author; alſo, by way of Preface, an hiſtorical Deduction of the Riſe and Progreſs of the *Engliſh* Stage.

XXII. The Dramatick Works of *Roger Boyle*, Earl of *Orrery*. In 2Vol. Octavo, Price bound 10*s*.

XXIII. A Tranſlation of the moſt celebrated Eſſays, which are diſperſed in the Memoirs of the Academy of Inſcriptions and *Belles Lettres* at *Paris*. In one Vol. Octavo, Price bound 5*s*.

XXIV. The Letters of Sir *Thomas Fitzoſborne*, on ſeveral Subjects. The third Edition complete. In one Vol. Octavo.

XXV. The Letters of *Pliny* the Conſul, with occaſional Remarks. By *William Melmoth*, Eſq. The third Edition.

